Helmets

A Wikipedia Compilation
by
Michael A. Linton

Contents

Chapter 1

Benty Grange Helmet

Coordinates: 53°03′19″N 1°53′56″W / 53.055299°N 1.898832°W

The Benty Grange Helmet on display in the Weston Park Museum

The **Benty Grange helmet** is an archaeological artefact excavated by Thomas Bateman in 1848 from an Anglo-Saxon tumulus (or *barrow*) at the Benty Grange Farm in the civil parish of Monyash in the English county of Derbyshire.

The remains and a reconstruction are in Sheffield's Weston Park Museum.

This helmet is of the Spangenhelm type and like the Pioneer helmet is boar-crested. The surviving iron bands would

have supported plates of horn (decayed in antiquity) held in place with small silver rivets[1] and the nasal of the helmet is decorated with a silver cross.

1.1 Boar Crest

Detail of the Boar shaped crest.

This helm is crested with an iron boar with bronze eyes inset with garnet, this sits upon an elliptical copper-alloy plate. The hips of the boar are made with pear shaped plates of gilded silver.[2] The 1986 reconstruction, based on conservation work carried out at the British Museum has boar bristles running along the back.[3]

In Norse mythology, the boar talisman was associated with Freyja's role as battle goddess, helmets with boar-crests are described in the Anglo-Saxon poem *Beowulf*.

1.2 References

[1] Bateman, T (1861). *Ten Years' Digging in Celtic and Saxon Grave Hills, in the counties of Derby, Stafford, and York, from 1848 to 1858; with notices of some former discoveries, hitherto unpublished, and remarks on the crania and pottery from the mounds*. London: John Russell Smith. Retrieved 14 November 2010.

[2] Bruce-Mitford, R; Luscombe, M R (1974). *Aspects of Anglo-Saxon archaeology. Sutton Hoo and other discoveries*. London: Victor Gollancz Limited. pp. 223–252. ISBN 0-575-01704-X.

[3] "Museums Sheffield". Retrieved 14 November 2010.

1.3 External links

- The 'Museums Sheffield' page for this object

Chapter 2

Coppergate Helmet

Coordinates: 53°57′39″N 1°04′59″W / 53.960934°N 1.083183°W

The **Coppergate Helmet** (also known as **York Helmet**) is an 8th-century Anglo-Saxon helmet found in York. It is remarkably well preserved and is one of only four Anglo-Saxon helmets discovered to date. The partial remains of a fifth helmet were found in the Staffordshire Hoard.

2.1 Construction

Like many other helmets of Germanic Western and Northern Europe in the Early Middle Ages the construction of Coppergate helmet is derivative of Late Roman helmet types.[1]

It has a rounded composite skull, the iron elements making up the skull are riveted together. Two deep cheek-pieces are attached to the skull by hinges. A mail curtain (camail) is attached to the lower rim of the helmet behind the cheek-pieces to defend the wearer's neck and an unusually large nose-guard (nasal) provided facial protection. The mail is remarkable in consisting of forge-welded links, rather than the far more common riveted links.[2] It is richly decorated with brass ornamentation. On analysis, the helmet was found to be made of iron, with applied brass-work containing approximately 85 percent copper.[3] Its basic construction is almost identical to another surviving Anglo-Saxon helmet, the Pioneer helmet. It is also very like the helmets depicted being worn by Anglo-Saxon Northumbrian cavalrymen on one of the Pictish Aberlemno Sculptured Stones, believed to depict the Battle of Dun Nechtain of 685.[4]

2.2 Decoration

The helmet has two low crests of brass, one running from front to back the other from side to side, forming a cross shape when viewed from above. The brass banding within the crests bears a Latin inscription:

> IN NOMINE : DNI : NOSTRI : IHV : SCS : SPS : DI : ET : OMNIBVS : DECEMVS : AMEN: OSHERE : XPI
>
> "In the name of our Lord Jesus, the Holy Spirit and God; and to all we say Amen / Oshere / Christ"

An alternative interpretation suggests the following translation:

> "In the name of our Lord Jesus Christ and of the Spirit of God, let us offer up Oshere to All Saints. Amen."[5]

Oshere is a male Anglian name and XPI are the first three letters of the word Christos Χριστός (*khristos*) in Greek.[3]

The brass crest terminates in a decorative animal head at the base of the nasal. The brass eyebrow decorations which flank the nasal also terminate in animal heads. The decoration of the nasal itself consists of two intertwined beasts, whose bodies and limbs degenerate into interlace ornament.[6]

Northumbrian cavalrymen (right) wearing helmets remarkably similar to the Coppergate Helmet. Pictish memorial stone at Aberlemno.

2.3 Discovery and conservation

The helmet had been hidden in a well found near what is now the JORVIK Viking Centre, and was damaged as it was uncovered by a mechanical digger in 1982. It is now in the Yorkshire Museum.[7]

2.4 References

[1] James, S. (1986) *Evidence from Dura Europos for the Origins of Late Roman Helmets*. In: Syria, T. 63, Fasc. 1/2 (1986), pp. 107–134. Published by: *Institut Francais du Proche-Orient*, p. 134

[2] D. Tweddle, The Anglian Helmet from Coppergate, Archaeology of York 17/8, York Archaeological Trust 1992

[3] "Coppergate SKP". Svensk Kärnbränslehantering AB. 2007-09-26. Retrieved 2008-07-02.

[4] Cruickshank, Graeme (1985), Nechtansmere 1300: A Commemoration, Forfar: Forfar & District Historical Society.

[5] "Antiquity Vol 64:242, 1990 pp 134-139 - J. W. Binns et al. - The Latin inscription on the Coppergate helmet". antiquity.ac.uk. Retrieved 2009-02-15.

[6] Wilson, David M. (1984) *Anglo-Saxon Art.* Thames and Hudson, pp. 67-69.

[7] Tweddle, Dominic (1992). *The Anglian Helmet from Coppergate*. Council for British Archaeology.

2.5 See also

- Viking Age arms and armour

2.6 External links

- http://penelope.uchicago.edu/~{}grout/encyclopaedia_romana/britannia/anglo-saxon/suttonhoo/coppergate.html
- Coppergate Helmet

Chapter 3

Coventry Sallet

The **Coventry Sallet** is a 15th-century helmet now on display at Herbert Art Gallery and Museum.[1] English sallets have been considered both rare and important.[2]

3.1 Description

The Sallet is 11 inches (27.9 cm) in height, 12.25 inches (31.1 cm) from front to back and is 7.75 inches (17.9 cm) wide.[1] It weighs 5.25 pounds (2.4 kg).[1] It has a short tail and a jawbone type visor with a brow reinforcing.[3] Stylistically, it is termed a "high crowned" helmet, different from the style usually seen in Italy or Germany.[4] A plume holder was added to the helmet at some time after its manufacture.[3]

3.2 History

The helmet was made around 1460, during the period of English civil conflict known as the Wars of the Roses, and the armourer's marks suggest that it was made by an artisan originating from Italy.[5] During the 19th century it was used in Coventry's Godiva Procession.[1] For a period it was kept on display at St Mary's Hall, Coventry, and is now shown at the city's Herbert Art Gallery and Museum.[1]

Very few pieces of English-made armour survive from this period; the Coventry Sallet is believed to be the only example of its type in England.[4]

3.3 References

[1] Shaffery, Peter Baron (1982). "Early English helmets Part II". *Guns, weapons & Militaria* **1** (3): 24–28.

[2] The Times, 13 August 1927: Arms And Armour. New Exhibits At Victoria And Albert Museum

[3] Blair, C (1955). "The Blithfield Sallet". *Archeological* **CXI**: 192–163.

[4] Gravett, Christopher (2001), *English Medieval Knight 1400-1500*, Osprey, p. 29, ISBN 978-1-84176-146-6

[5] Shaffery, Peter Baron (1982). "Early English helmets Part II". *Guns, weapons & Militaria* **1** (3): 24–28. Gravett, Christopher (2001), *English Medieval Knight 1400-1500*, Osprey, p. 29, ISBN 978-1-84176-146-6

3.4 External links

- *This article is about an item held at Herbert Art Gallery and Museum, Coventry. Object reference: AR.1962.54*

The Sallet seen from the front

Chapter 4

Crosby Garrett Helmet

Coordinates: 54°28′44″N 2°25′12″W / 54.479°N 2.420°W

The **Crosby Garrett Helmet** is a copper alloy Roman cavalry helmet dating from the late 2nd or early 3rd century AD. It was found by an unnamed metal detectorist near Crosby Garrett in Cumbria, England, in May 2010. Later investigations found that a Romano-British farming settlement had occupied the site where the helmet was discovered, which was located a few miles away from a Roman road and a Roman army fort. It is possible that the owner of the helmet was a local inhabitant who had served with the Roman cavalry.

The helmet appears to have been deliberately folded up and deposited in an artificial stone structure. It is thought to have been used for ceremonial occasions rather than for combat, and may already have been an antique by the time it was buried. It is of the same type as the Newstead Helmet (found in 1905) and its design also has similarities with the Ribchester Helmet (found in 1796) and the Hallaton Helmet (found in 2000), though its facial features are more akin to those of helmets found in southern Europe. Its design may allude to the Trojans, whose exploits the Romans re-enacted in cavalry tournaments.

Dr Ralph Jackson, Senior Curator of Romano-British Collections at the British Museum, has described the helmet as "...an immensely interesting and outstandingly important find ... Its face mask is both extremely finely wrought and chillingly striking, but it is as an ensemble that the helmet is so exceptional and, in its specifics, unparalleled. It is a find of the greatest national (and, indeed, international) significance."[1]

On 7 October 2010, the helmet was sold at Christie's for £2.3 million (US$3.6 million) to an undisclosed private buyer. Tullie House Museum and Art Gallery in Carlisle sought to purchase the helmet, with the support of the British Museum but was outbid. The helmet has so far been publicly displayed twice, once in a 2012 exhibition at the Royal Academy of Arts, and again at Tullie House in 2013-14.

4.1 Description

The Crosby Garrett helmet is an almost complete example of a two-piece Roman cavalry helmet. The visor portrays the face of a youthful, clean-shaven male with curly hair. The headpiece is in the shape of a Phrygian cap, on the crest of which is a winged griffin that stands with one raised foot resting on an amphora. The visor was originally attached to the headpiece by means of a hinge; the iron hinge pin has not survived, but its existence has been inferred from the presence of powdery deposits of iron oxide residue. The helmet would have been held in place using a leather strap attached from the wearer's neck to a decorated rivet on either side of the helmet, below the ear. Wear marks caused by opening and closing the visor are still visible, and at some point the helmet was repaired using a bronze sheet which was riveted across two splits.[2] Only two other Roman helmets complete with visors have been found in Britain – the Newstead Helmet and Ribchester Helmet.[3]

The helmet and visor were cast from an alloy consisting of an average of 82% copper, 10% zinc and 8% tin. This alloy was probably derived from melted-down scrap brass with a low zinc content, with which some tin had been added to improve the quality of the casting.[2][4] Some of the fragments show traces of a white metal coating, indicating that the visor would originally have been tinned to give the appearance of silver.[4] The griffin was cast separately from a different alloy consisting of 68% copper, 4% zinc, 18% tin and 10% lead. The visor would originally have been a silver hue and the helmet would have had a coppery yellow appearance.[2] The helmet's creation can be dated to the

The helmet on display at Christie's in 2010

late 2nd or early 3rd century from the use of a particular type of decorated rivet as well as some of its design features, such as its pierced eyes.[5]

There has been much debate about the symbolic meaning of the helmet's design. The griffin was the companion of Nemesis, the goddess of vengeance and fate. They were both seen as agents of death and were often linked with gladiatorial combat.[1] The meaning of the face and headpiece are less clearly identifiable. Suggestions have ranged from the Greek god Attis and the hero Perseus, to the Roman gods Mithras and Jupiter Dolichenus, to a more general Eastern Mediterranean appearance that could possibly have been meant to suggest a Trojan identity.[2] The Phrygian cap was often used by the Romans as a visual motif representing the Trojans.[5]

4.2 Discovery and restoration

The helmet and visor were found in May 2010 in pastureland on a farm owned by Eric Robinson at Crosby Garrett in Cumbria. The finder, an unnamed metal detectorist in his 20s from Peterlee, County Durham, had been detecting with his father in two adjacent fields for some years but had previously only discovered some Roman coins and other small artefacts. The findspot is situated not far from a Roman road. A number of earthworks are located nearby, indicating the presence of a previously unrecorded ancient settlement.[2] The area was strategically placed on the route to the northern frontier of Roman Britain within the territory of the Carvetii tribe. The Roman army would have been present in the area and would certainly have used the nearby road. A Roman auxiliary fort stood only 9 kilometres (5.6 mi) to the north-east at Verterae (Brough Castle).[5]

Following the helmet's discovery, the area around the findspot was investigated in a project sponsored by the Tullie House Museum and Art Gallery and the Portable Antiquities Scheme. The earthworks noted earlier were found to be part of a substantial enclosure surrounded by ditches, within which buildings had once stood. The enclosure, which measures as much as 500 metres (1,600 ft) long on its southern side, combines both native British and Roman methods of fortification. A sunken area within the enclosure may possibly have served as a paddock for horses, while the evidence for the buildings is concentrated in the enclosure's northern portion. The remnants of Romano-British field systems in the surrounding area show that the area was under cultivation and animal remains found on the site indicate that the inhabitants also raised livestock, including sheep, goats and pigs. The presence of Roman pottery suggests that the inhabitants had adopted some elements of the Roman lifestyle, but their community may well have been there long before the Romans arrived. Archaeological evidence from the enclosure indicates that the site may have been first settled as far back as the Bronze Age, at least 1,000 years before the helmet was deposited.[5]

The finder discovered the helmet and visor buried together some 25 cm (10 in) below the surface,[2] at a site located on a ledge at the lower end of the settlement. It had been placed onto two stone slabs at the bottom of a hole which had been back-filled with soil. A stone cap had been laid on top.[5] The helmet was found in 33 large fragments and 34 small fragments[4] and had apparently been folded before burial. The visor was mostly intact and had been placed face down. The griffin had become detached and was found with the helmet.[2] No other artefacts were found at the time, but the subsequent Tullie House/PAS excavations at the findspot discovered a number of copper and iron objects, a bead and two Roman coins dating to between 330-337. The coins were found within the artificial stone feature in which the helmet had been deposited and may have been buried at the same time.[5]

The finder did not initially realise that he had found a Roman artefact and thought at first that it was a Victorian ornament. He eventually identified it as Roman by consulting auction catalogues, searching the Internet and getting advice from dealers. Find Liaison Officers from the Portable Antiquities Scheme were notified of the discovery and visited the findspot along with the finder. Christie's commissioned Darren Bradbury, an independent conservator and restorer, to restore the helmet and visor for sale.[2] Although Christie's was asked to delay the restoration so that a full scientific examination could be carried out, this request was not granted and information about the helmet's burial may have been lost as a result.[6] However, the British Museum was able to inspect the find during restoration and X-ray fluorescence spectrometry was carried out to determine the composition of the headpiece, visor and griffin. Bradbury's restoration work took some 240 hours and involved the repair of cracks and holes using resin and cyanoacrylate, retouched to match the appearance of the surrounding material.[2]

4.3 Similarities and usage

The helmet and visor have marked similarities to a number of other Roman cavalry helmets. The visor is a cavalry sports type C (H. Russell Robinson classification) or type V (Maria Kohlert classification). Similar examples have been found across the Roman Empire from Britain to Syria. It is of the same type as the Newstead Helmet, found in Scotland in 1905, and its facial features most closely parallel a helmet that was found at Nola in Italy and is now in the British Museum. The rendering of the hair is similar to that of a type C helmet found at Belgrade in Serbia and

Side view of the helmet.

dated to the 2nd century AD.[3][4] The griffin ornament is unique, though it may parallel a lost "sphinx of bronze" that may originally have been attached to the crest of the Ribchester Helmet, discovered in Lancashire in 1796. The headpiece is nearly unique; only one other example in the form of a Phrygian cap has been found, in a fragmentary state, at Ostrov in Romania, dated to the second half of the 2nd century AD. Rings on the back of the helmet and on the griffin may have been used to attach colourful streamers or ribbons.[3]

Such helmets were used for *hippika gymnasia*, cavalry tournaments that were performed in front of emperors and

The Ostrov Helmet from Romania, which has a similar "Phrygian cap" design

A reenactor and horse wearing display armour typical of the hippika gymnasia

senior commanders. Horses and riders wore lavishly decorated clothes, armour and plumes while performing feats of horsemanship and re-enacting historical and legendary battles, such as the wars of the Greeks and Trojans.[2] According to the Roman writer Arrian:

> [T]hose of high rank or superior in horsemanship wear gilded helmets of iron or bronze to draw the attention of the spectators. Unlike the helmets made for active service, these do not cover the head and cheeks only but are made to fit all round the faces of the riders with apertures for the eyes . . . From the helmets hang yellow plumes, a matter of décor as much as utility. As the horses move forward, the slightest breeze adds to the beauty of these plumes.— Arrian, *Ars Tactica* 34[7]

Combat gear was issued by and belonged to the Roman army, and had to be returned at the end of a wearer's service. Cavalry sports equipment appears to have been treated differently, as soldiers apparently privately commissioned and purchased it for their own use. They evidently retained it after they completed their service. Both helmets and visors have been found in graves and other contexts away from obvious military sites, as well as being deposited in forts and their vicinity.[2] In some cases they were carefully folded up and buried, as in the case of the Guisborough Helmet. The Dutch historian Johan Nicolay has identified a "lifecycle" for Roman military equipment in which ex-soldiers took certain items home with them as a reminder of their service and occasionally disposed of them away from garrison sites as grave goods or votive offerings.[8]

The circumstances in which the Crosby Garret helmet was buried are still unclear, but the discoveries made by the post-discovery Tullie House/PAS excavations have provided much more detail about its context. It was clearly deposited within an artificial feature that had been specially constructed; Stuart Noon of the Museum of Lancashire suggests that the feature may have been intended as a memorial of some sort. It was not buried in an isolated spot but within a long-occupied Romano-British farming settlement that had clearly adopted aspects of Roman culture. Given the settlement's proximity to Roman military locations, it is very possible that some of its inhabitants served with the Roman army, which often recruited mounted auxiliaries from among native peoples. The helmet may well already have been a valuable antique at the time of its burial; if the coins found nearby reflect when it was buried, it could have been over a century old by the time it was deposited. It was deliberately broken before being buried in what may have been intended as a ritual sacrifice. The identity of its owner will never be known, but it could have been that a local inhabitant who had formerly served with the Roman cavalry was responsible for the helmet's deposition.[5]

4.4 Auction and controversy

Although the find was reported under the Portable Antiquities Scheme, it was not declared treasure under the 1996 Treasure Act because single items of non-precious metal are not covered by the act. The finder and landowner were thus free to dispose of the helmet as they saw fit. The discovery was publicly announced by Christie's in mid-September 2010; the helmet was the centrepiece of its 7 October auction catalogue, featuring on the cover and six more pages. Its value was put at £200,000 – £300,000 ($309,200 – $463,800). The Tullie House Museum and Art Gallery launched an appeal with the aim of purchasing the helmet and making it the focus of a new Roman frontier gallery due to open in 2011. The campaign immediately attracted numerous donations, including £50,000 from an anonymous overseas benefactor who offered the sum if a matching sum could be raised by the public (it was); a £1 million offer from the National Heritage Memorial Fund; a £300,000 pledge from the Headley Trust and the Monument Trust; £200,000 from the Art Fund; and £75,000 from the J Paul Getty Jr Charitable Trust. By the time of the auction three and a half weeks after the campaign had been launched, the museum had raised enough money to support a bid of up to £1.7 million. Behind the scenes, efforts were made to persuade the finder and landowner to agree a private sale with the museum, but these approaches failed.[2]

The initial estimate was passed within seconds of the auction opening. Six bidders pushed the price towards a million pounds and Tullie House was forced to drop out at £1.7 million. Two remaining bidders took the bid past £2 million; the winning bidder, an anonymous UK resident and fine art collector bidding by phone, paid a total of £2,330,468.75 including the buyer's premium and VAT. The outcome aroused controversy and prompted calls for the Treasure Act to be revised, though *British Archaeology* noted that the circumstances of the helmet's discovery may have resulted in it being outside the scope of even a revised act.[2] It is still possible that the helmet could come into public ownership; if the winning bidder wishes to export it, an export licence would have to be applied for and if a temporary export bar was placed on it an opportunity could arise for funds to be raised by a public institution to purchase the helmet.[9]

The helmet on auction at Christie's auction house in London on 7 October 2010

4.5 Display

Since its sale in 2010, the helmet been on public display three times. It was lent by its owner to the Royal Academy of Arts in London, and was put on display from 15 September to 9 December 2012 as part of an exhibition of bronzes.[10] From 1 November 2013 until 26 January 2014 the helmet was on display at the Tullie House Museum and Art Gallery in Carlisle,[11] and a printed guide was produced for the occasion.[12] It was subsequently displayed at the British Museum from 28 January to 27 April 2014.[13]

4.6 References

[1] Jackson, Ralph (9 September 2010). "Roman Cavalry Sports helmet from Crosby Garrett, Cumbria" (PDF). *Portable Antiquities Scheme*. Retrieved 14 September 2010.

[2] Worrell, Sally; Jackson, Ralph; Mackay, Andrew; Bland, Roger; Pitts, Mike (Jan–Feb 2011). "The Crosby Garrett Roman Helmet". *British Archaeology* (116). Retrieved 3 March 2011.

[3] "A Roman Bronze Cavalry Parade Helmet". *Christies*. September 2010. Retrieved 3 March 2010.

[4] Worrell, Sally. "LANCUM-E48D73 HELMET". *Portable Antiquities Scheme*. Retrieved 13 September 2010.

[5] Symonds, Matthew (February 2014). "Crosby Garrett - Exploring the helmet's burial place". *Current Archaeology*: 12–17.

[6] Kennedy, Maev (13 September 2010). "Roman cavalry helmet found with metal detector may go abroad at auction". *The Guardian* (London). Retrieved 13 September 2010.

[7] Webster, Graham (1998). *The Roman Imperial Army of the First and Second Centuries A.D.* University of Oklahoma Press. p. 156. ISBN 978-0-806-13000-2.

[8] Nicolay, Johan (2007). *Armed Batavians: Use and Significance of Weaponry and Horse Gear from Non-military Contexts in the Rhine Delta, 50 BC to AD 450*. Amsterdam University Press. ISBN 978-9-053-56253-6.

[9] Barnes, Anthony (7 October 2010). "Roman helmet found in field sells for £2.3m". *The Independent* (London). Retrieved 7 October 2010.

[10] "Crosby Garrett Helmet to be part of Royal Academy exhibition". *BBC News*. 9 September 2012. Retrieved 9 September 2012.

[11] "Crosby Garrett Roman Helmet exhibition". Retrieved 13 November 2013.

[12] Breeze, D.J.; Bishop, M.C., eds. (2013). *The Crosby Garrett Helmet*. Pewsey: The Armatura Press, for Tullie House Museum & Art Gallery. ISBN 978-0-957-02617-9.

[13] "Roman war games: helmets from Crosby Garrett and Ribchester". British Museum. Retrieved 28 March 2015.

4.7 External links

- Roman Cavalry Sports helmet from Crosby Garrett, Cumbria by Dr Ralph Jackson
- Roman Helmet Appeal
- Christie's sale catalogue
- "Exceptional Roman cavalry helmet discovered in Cumbria". Daniel Pett, Portable Antiquities Scheme, 13 September 2010

Chapter 5

Guisborough Helmet

The **Guisborough Helmet** is a Roman cavalry helmet found in 1864 near Guisborough in Redcar and Cleveland (at the time part of the North Riding of Yorkshire). It was originally fitted with a pair of protective cheek-pieces, which have not survived; the holes by which they were attached can be seen in front of the helmet's ear guards. It is lavishly decorated with engraved and embossed figures, indicating that it was probably used for displays or cavalry tournaments, though it may well have been intended to be worn in battle as well. The helmet was found in what appears to have been a carefully arranged deposition in a bed of gravel, distant from any known Roman sites. After it was recovered during road works it was donated to the British Museum in London, where it was restored and is currently on display.[1]

5.1 Design and origins

Made from copper alloy in the 3rd century AD, the helmet's brow band is engraved and embossed with representations of shrines (aediculae) housing the deities Victory, Mars and Minerva, all of whom were associated with war. Prancing horsemen are depicted between the figures. The brow band has three diadem-like peaks bordered by writhing snakes whose heads meet at the centre, forming an arch above the central figure of Mars. Two bosses stand out at the rear of the helmet, at the centre of embossed flowers. The sides and top of the helmet are embossed with feathers and a feather-like pattern.[2][3] The design is similar to others found in Worthing, Norfolk and Chalon-sur-Saône in France.[4] Despite its relative thinness and lavish decoration, it is thought that such helmets would have been used in battle as well as in parades or *hippika gymnasia* (cavalry tournaments).[5]

The helmet remains something of an enigma. It was buried in a compressed and folded state in complete isolation from any other objects of the same period and at some remove from any known Roman sites; how and why it came to be deposited remains unknown.[6] There is no closely associated fort or fortress in the vicinity. However, the Dutch historian Johan Nicolay has identified a "lifecycle" for Roman military equipment in which ex-soldiers took items home with them as a reminder of their service and occasionally disposed of them away from garrison sites, for instance by votive deposition or burial with the dead.[7] Another Roman cavalry helmet, known as the Crosby Garrett Helmet, was discovered in Cumbria in May 2010 in a broadly similar context – away from any known settlements but folded before burial – suggesting that it may have been a votive offering or loot that had been hidden for safe-keeping.[8]

5.2 Discovery and restoration

The helmet was discovered on 19 August 1864 at Barnaby Grange Farm, about 2 miles west of Guisborough town centre. It was found buried deep in a bed of gravel during road works carried out for the Cleveland Railway Company.[9] The Reverend J.C. Atkinson described the circumstances of its discovery in an article for *The Gentleman's Magazine* in September 1864:

> A short time since it was found expedient to supersede the existing accommodation-road to Barnaby Grange Farm, which crosses the Cleveland Railway on the level, by a new one carried beneath the line. While prosecuting the necessary excavation, and after reaching a depth of a few feet, a variety of [animal] bones, most of them in exceedingly good preservation, and with an abundance of earthy phosphate of

The Guisborough Helmet was found at this spot during the construction of a road leading under the Cleveland Railway's now-demolished line, of which the abutments can still be seen

> iron investing them, were dug upon. These were carefully collected, and have now accumulated to a mass of considerable extent ... But the most remarkable of the non-osseus matters was a folded and doubled metal plate, embossed and engraved.[10]

No other artefacts were found at the site and the bones appeared to have no connection with the helmet. They had apparently been deposited naturally by the prehistoric stream that had laid down the gravel bed. Atkinson noted that the artefact was in a strikingly good condition despite its obvious antiquity and the damage done to it:

> Apart from the folding and doubling to which it has been subjected, it is in remarkably good preservation. It is scarcely corroded in any perceptible degree in any visible part, but is as bright as on the day it was consigned to its place of concealment. Neither is it bruised or dented, except where the workman's pick happened to strike; indeed, it is not even scratched.[10]

He commented that the find appeared to have been "deliberately buried in a hole dug for the purpose, just where it was found; and the unbattered, and even unscratched condition of its entire visible surface seems amply to confirm the inference."[10] Its crushed condition meant that that it was not initially recognisable as a helmet, though its ornamentation was clearly visible. Atkinson described the outer decoration:

> The chief ornamentation seems to depend on the effigies of two snakes in strong relief and wrought hollow, with their heads meeting ... The bodies of the snakes slightly descending thence, and diverging, seem then to have taken an upward direction so as to enclose or enfold the central portion of the plate. But these details cannot be ascertained so long as the object remains in its present condition. Besides the snakes, on which the scales are represented by regular series of curved lines carefully engraved, several raised boss-like projections, which themselves, as well as the plate around their bases, are rather elaborately chased or engraved, are observable; and the outlines of certain figures, apparently armed in a fashion rather resembling a Greek soldier's defensive equipment, are visible on another part of the

Detail of the figure of Mars on the front of the helmet

surface. Besides these figures and ornaments, other minor ornamental engravings are worked in here and there.[10]

It was at first incorrectly identified as a breastplate of unknown origin (Atkinson thought it to be of "Oriental workmanship") and age. Thomas Richmond, a local historian, erroneously assigned it in 1868 to "a late Celtic, or early Anglo-Saxon period".[11]

In 1878, Frederick B. Greenwood, who owned the land on which the helmet had been found, presented it to the British Museum. It was restored at the museum by Robert Cooper Ready, resulting in the discovery that it was in fact a Roman helmet.[12] It is currently on display in the British Museum's Roman Britain section in Room 49. Similar helmets have been found elsewhere in Europe; the closest continental parallel is a helmet found in the River Saône at Chalon-sur-Saône in France in the 1860s.[13] The Guisborough Helmet represents a distinct form of cavalry helmet, dubbed the "Guisborough type", which can be distinguished by three peaked scallops on the brow band.[2]

5.3 References

[1] British Museum collection database. Accessed 17 November 2010.

[2] Dixon, Karen R.; Southern, Pat. *The Roman cavalry: from the first to the third century AD*, p. 112. Routledge, 1997. ISBN 978-0-415-17039-0

[3] Robinson, H. Russell. *The armour of imperial Rome*, p. 102. Scribner, 1975. ISBN 978-0-684-13956-2

[4] A visual comparison of the Chalon and Guisborough Helmets, which are extremely similar, can be found in Jochen Garbsch, *Römische Paraderüstungen* (Beck, Munich, 1978), plate 31.

[5] Dixon, Karen R.; Southern, Pat. *The late Roman army*, pp. 91-92. Routledge, 1996. ISBN 978-0-7134-7047-5

[6] Phillips, Jenny; Rowe, Peter. *Roman Teesside - Archaeological Booklet No. 3*, p. 22. Tees Archaeology, 2004

[7] Nicolay, Johan. *Armed Batavians: Use and Significance of Weaponry and Horse Gear from Non-military Contexts in the Rhine Delta (50 BC to AD 450)*. Amsterdam University Press - Amsterdam Archaeological Studies, 2008. ISBN 978-90-5356-253-6

[8] Worrell, Sally. "LANCUM-E48D73 HELMET". Portable Antiquities Scheme. Accessed 17 November 2010.

[9] Elgee, Frank. *Romans in Cleveland*, p. 13. Hood, 1923.

[10] Atkinson, J.C. "Further Discovery of Relics connected with the Remote Occupants of Cleveland", pp. 304-308. *The Gentleman's Magazine*, vol. 217, 1864

[11] Richmond, Thomas. *The local records of Stockton and the neighbourhood*, p. 268. William Robinson, 1868

[12] *Proceedings of the Society of Antiquaries of London*. Volume 7, p. 391. 1876.

[13] Toynbee, Jocelyn M. C. *Art in Britain under the Romans*, p. 264. Clarendon Press, 1964.

5.4 External links

- British Museum database entry and photographs

Chapter 6

Hallaton Helmet

The **Hallaton Helmet** is a decorated iron Roman cavalry parade helmet originally covered in a sheet of silver and decorated in places with gold leaf. It was discovered in 2000 near Hallaton, Leicestershire after Ken Wallace, a member of the Hallaton Fieldwork Group, found coins in the area. Further investigation by professional archaeologists from University of Leicester Archaeological Services discovered that the site appeared to have been used as a large-scale Iron Age shrine. Nine years of conservation and restoration has been undertaken by experts from the British Museum, supported by a Heritage Lottery Fund grant of £650,000. The helmet is now on permanent display at the Harborough Museum in Market Harborough alongside other artefacts from the Hallaton Treasure hoard.

Although it was found shattered into thousands of pieces and is now heavily corroded, the helmet still bears evidence of its original finely decorated design. It was plated with silver-gilt and decorated with images of goddesses and equestrian scenes. It would have been used by a Roman auxiliary cavalryman for displays and possibly in battle. The identity of the owner is not known but the helmet was discovered on a native British ceremonial site, buried alongside thousands of Iron Age British and Roman coins. It is possible that the helmet was owned by a Briton who fought alongside the Romans during the conquest of Britain.

6.1 Description and interpretation

The helmet is an example of a three-piece Roman ceremonial cavalry helmet, made of sheet iron covered with silver sheet and partly decorated with gold leaf.[1] Such helmets were worn by Roman auxiliary cavalrymen in displays known as *hippika gymnasia* and may also have been worn in battle, despite their relative thinness and lavish decoration.[2] Horses and riders wore lavishly decorated clothes, armour and plumes while performing feats of horsemanship and re-enacting historical and legendary battles, such as the wars of the Greeks and Trojans.[3]

It is the only Roman helmet ever found in Britain that still has most of its silver-gilt plating attached.[4] The helmet would originally have had two cheekpieces attached via holes in front of its ear guards. It has a prominent browguard, the shape of which is similar to that of the 3rd-century Guisborough Helmet, discovered in 1864 near Guisborough in Redcar and Cleveland. The rear of the helmet bowl descended to form a neckguard.[5]

As is the case with other Roman cavalry helmets, the Hallaton Helmet was very ornately decorated. The closest parallel to the Hallaton Helmet in terms of overall appearance is a helmet found in Xanten-Wardt in Germany which, like the Hallaton example, is made of silver-gilded iron with a wreath on the crown, a central figure on the browguard and a garland of flowers on the neckguard.[6] A number of similar features have survived on the Hallaton Helmet. Its bowl is decorated with laurel wreaths while the scalloped browguard is edged with elaborate cabling. In the centre of the browguard is the (now heavily damaged) bust of a woman flanked by repoussé lions.[7] Her identity is unclear, but she may have been an empress or goddess. The iconography is reminiscent of depictions of Cybele, the *Magna Mater* or "Great Mother" whose image was used to promote the values of the Augustan period a few decades after the helmet was deposited. However, the depiction has a number of features that are more in common with funerary art.[6]

The earguards are in the shape of silver ears, and the neckguard is decorated with a scrolling leaf pattern. Six detached cheekpieces were found within the helmet bowl along with the disintegrated remains of a seventh, although only two would have been needed. Hinges were also found, as was the pin of one cheekpiece, which had been bent. It may have been forcibly removed or possibly sustained damage at a later date, perhaps from a plough.[5] It is unclear why

The "Emperor" cheekpiece (no. 1), depicting a Roman emperor being crowned by Victory while trampling a barbarian under his horse's hooves

there were so many cheekpieces accompanying the helmet; it is possible that they may all have been used on the same helmet to customise its appearance on different occasions, or alternatively they may have been intended as spares in the event of damage. The surviving cheekpieces are very elaborate. Five of the cheekpieces show equestrian scenes; one depicts the triumph of a Roman emperor on horseback, holding his arm in the air as he is crowned with a laurel wreath by the goddess Victoria (Victory). A cowering barbarian is depicted below being trampled by the hooves of the emperor's horse. Another less well-preserved cheekpiece depicts a possibly Middle Eastern figure holding a large cornucopia, and a Roman helmet and shield below.[7]

The helmet was found along with some 5,296 Iron Age and Roman coins mostly dating to AD 20/30–50, the largest assemblage of Iron Age coins ever found in Britain.[1] They had been buried at what appears to have been a pre-Roman shrine where large-scale animal slaughtering had taken place; nearly 7,000 bone fragments were also found at the site, 97 per cent of which were from pigs. Many appear to have been buried without the meat being eaten, suggesting that they had been used as offerings. The site is located on a hilltop which appears to have been encircled by a boundary

ditch and palisade, with a possible processional way leading up to it. In Roman times it would have been located in the territory of the Corieltauvi, who inhabited an area of the East Midlands stretching from Northamptonshire to Lincolnshire.[8]

It is very unusual to find a helmet of this type on a native ceremonial site.[9] It was probably made between 25 and 50 AD, close to the date of the conquest of Britain in 43 AD;[1] this makes it one of the earliest Roman helmets ever found in Britain.[4] Other British examples of later date were found in isolation away from settlements, as in the cases of the Guisborough Helmet and Crosby Garrett Helmet, or on Roman sites, as with the Newstead Helmet. Various suggestions have been put forward as to why the helmet ended up at Hallaton; it may have been owned by a Briton who served in the Roman cavalry, it may have been a diplomatic gift from the Romans or it may have been captured in war.[1] According to Dr Jeremy Hill of the British Museum, the first explanation is the most likely: "Here you probably have a situation where local Britons are fighting on the Roman side."[10] The Roman cavalry at this time was mostly recruited from native allies, not Italians, suggesting that Britons fought alongside the Romans as they carried out their conquest of Britain.[1]

6.2 Discovery and restoration

The Hallaton Helmet and cheekpieces on display at the Harborough Museum, Market Harborough

The helmet was discovered by 71-year-old Ken Wallace, a retired teacher and amateur archaeologist. He and other members of the Hallaton Fieldwork Group had found fragments of Roman pottery on a hill near Hallaton in 2000.[11] He visited the site with a second-hand metal detector late one afternoon and found about 200 coins, which had been buried in a series of small pits dug into the clay.[12] He also found another artifact, which he left in the ground overnight. The following day he returned to examine his discovery and found it that it was a silver ear. He reported the find to Leicestershire's county archaeologist, who called in the University of Leicester Archaeological Services (ULAS) to excavate the site.[13] The dig took place in the spring of 2003.[12]

The helmet was too fragile to be excavated *in situ* so it was removed within a block of earth held together with plaster of Paris. It was taken to the British Museum in London for conservation, which took nine years of work by conservator Marilyn Hockey and her colleagues Fleur Shearman and Duygu Çamurcuoğlu.[1] Corrosion and the effects of time had shattered the helmet into thousands of pieces,[11] most of which were smaller than the nail on a person's little finger.[14] The reconstructed and conserved helmet was unveiled in January 2012.[1]

Leicester County Council was able to raise £1 million to buy the entire hoard and pay for the conservation of the helmet, with the assistance of donations from the Heritage Lottery Fund (which gave a £650,000 grant[13]), the Art Fund and other trusts and charities.[11] The helmet was valued at £300,000;[11] under the terms of the Treasure Act, Ken Wallace and the landowner were each awarded £150,000.[13]

The helmet was put on permanent public display at the end of January 2012 at the Harborough Museum in Market Harborough, nine miles from the site where the hoard was found, alongside other objects found at Hallaton.[11]

6.3 References

[1] Hill, Jeremy (10 January 2012). "Finishing a 3D, 2,000 year-old Roman jigsaw puzzle: the Hallaton helmet unveiled". British Museum. Archived from the original on 9 March 2013. Retrieved 12 January 2012.

[2] Dixon, Karen R.; Southern, Pat (1996). *The Late Roman Army*. Routledge. pp. 91–92. ISBN 978-0-7134-7047-5.

[3] Worrell, Sally; Jackson, Ralph; Mackay, Andrew; Bland, Roger; Pitts, Mike (Jan–Feb 2011). "The Crosby Garrett Roman Helmet". *British Archaeology* (116). Archived from the original on 9 March 2013. Retrieved 3 March 2011.

[4] "Magnificent 2,000-year-old Roman helmet unveiled". Art Fund. 9 January 2012. Archived from the original on 9 March 2013. Retrieved 12 January 2012.

[5] "Hallaton Helmet Update December 2010" (PDF). Leicester County Council. December 2010. Archived from the original on 9 March 2013. Retrieved 12 January 2012.

[6] Sharp, Helen; James, Simon (March 2012). "Reconstructing the Hallaton Helmet". *Current Archaeology* (264): 38–41.

[7] Sharp, Helen (Spring 2011). "New Hallaton Helmet Discoveries". *Branchline* (Leicester County Council).

[8] "The Hallaton Treasure: evidence of a new kind of shrine?". *Current Archaeology*. Archived from the original on 9 March 2013. Retrieved 12 January 2012.

[9] "The Hallaton Helmet" (PDF). Leicestershire County Council. Archived from the original on 9 March 2013. Retrieved 12 January 2012.

[10] "Hallaton helmet unveiled after nine-year restoration". BBC News. 10 January 2012. Archived from the original on 9 March 2013. Retrieved 12 January 2012.

[11] Kennedy, Maev (10 January 2012). "Unique Roman cavalry helmet pieced together 10 years after discovery". *The Guardian*. Archived from the original on 9 March 2013. Retrieved 12 January 2012.

[12] "Iron Age coin hoard uncovered". BBC News. 7 April 2003. Archived from the original on 9 March 2013. Retrieved 12 January 2012.

[13] Singh, Anita (11 January 2012). "Roman helmet turns history on its head". *Daily Telegraph*. Archived from the original on 9 March 2013. Retrieved 12 January 2012.

[14] Malvern, Jack (11 January 2012). "'Jigsaw' helmet sheds new light on Britain's relations with Roman Empire". *The Times*. Archived from the original on 9 March 2013. Retrieved 12 January 2012.

Chapter 7

Helmet of Agighiol

The **Helmet of Agighiol** (Romanian: *Coiful de la Agighiol*) is a Geto-Dacian silver helmet dating from the 5th century BC, housed in the National Museum of Romanian History, Bucharest.

It comes from Agighiol area, in the Tulcea County, Romania.

The helmet is similar to the Helmet of Coţofeneşti and other three Getian gold or silver helmets discovered so far.

7.1 See also

- Getae

7.2 External links

Helmet of Agighiol.

Chapter 8

Helmet of Coțofenești

The **Golden Helmet of Coțofenești** is a Geto-Dacian helmet dating from the first half of the 4th century BC.

In 1929, a child named Traian Simion uncovered the helmet by chance on the territory of the village of Poiana Coțofenești (now called Poiana Vărbilău), Prahova County, Romania, in the location called "Vârful Fundăturii". At that time it was part of the Mălăieşti commune.

Thereupon, Ion Andriesescu, professor of Prehistory at the Bucharest University conducted a thorough investigation at the site. The team of archaeologists noticed that helmet was not part of a gold treasure or grave but it was part of a local Geto-Dacian La Tène settlement.[1] Archaeologists concluded that the helmet was a stray find, as only a few late Hallstatt pottery fragments were found, some of them wheeled. The helmet is kept at the National History Museum of Romania (inv 11420).

8.1 Analysis

Almost a kilogram heavy, the gold helmet is very well preserved, missing only the part of its skull cap. The form of the helmet and its decorations reveal the autochthonous character of this Geto-Dacian artwork. The helmet is decorated with large studs on the top of the skull and two very large apotropaic eyes, meant to ward off the evil eye and magic spells.[1] It was established that it belonged to an unknown local Geto-Dacian king or to a local aristocratic noble, from around year 400 BC .[1] One theory — without any poof, however — is that this item was the sacred helmet of Zalmoxis, the living god-prophet of the Dacians.

Helmet decorations depict a range of mythical creatures, and an illustration, on either cheek-piece, of a ritual enactment.[2]

The cheek-pieces of the Poiana-Coțofenești helmet show a ram being sacrificed by a man who kneels on its body and is about to cut its throat with a short knife. The iconography on the right side of the helmet is of a great interest, and has been interpreted in light of the tauroctony scene from the Mithraic Mysteries. Environment and affluence might well account for a change to a larger beast in the species offered and a similar interpretation of a bull-slaying episode.[3] This sacrifice of the ram might have been performed by the "king-priest-god" .[4]

The pair of Voracious Beasts on the Coţofeneşti neck-guard occupy a lower register along with a similar creature deprived of a victim's leg.[3] This motif of the "Voracious Beast" is found earlier in Assyrian art, and was popular among the Etruscans. Phoenicia was probably the intermediary for its transferral to Italy and around the Adriatic, but Voracious Beast must also have traveled through Asia Minor to appear in a North Thracian idiom not only on the Coţofeneşti neck-guard but also in high relief on the base of the Aghighiol beakers (Aghighiol is a village near the Danube Delta in eastern Romania).[3]

The upper register displays a row of three seated or squatting winged creatures, rather monkey-like with human faces, long forearms, and long tails. These, however, are surely direct, if run-down, descendants of the sphinxes on a gold beaker from Amlash .[3]

The eyes on a Greek battle-shield may be designated to ward off evil blows, but once translated onto a helmet, and above the eyes of a North Thracian noble who wore it, could mean "I see twice as well, I have eyes like my hawk".[5] The Thracian gold and silversmiths who manufactured the objects were aware of other contemporary art styles —

The Golden Helmet of Coțofenești

Mythological scene on the side

those of Scythia, Greece, northeast Italy and now modern Slovenia were known through trade, travel and meetings — and they adapted conventions of representation suitable for their own purposes.[5] The meaning of these motifs was no doubt context-specific.[5]

The decorations such as rosette, strips, triangles, spiral and others are specific Geto-Dacian art motifs. The scene of sacrifice the ram is an oriental Iranian theme that entered in the Greek art and from there in the 'barbarian' art. Therefore, the helmet seems to have been realized in a Greek workshop. But, in the same time the awkward technique of execution that contrasts with the perfect technique of a Greek craftsman points out to an autochthonous one.[6]

8.2 In popular culture

A replica of the helmet appeared in the 1967 historical movie *Dacii* (*The Dacians*) by Sergiu Nicolaescu, though it took place at least 500 years after the period to which the helmet has been dated. Worn by the Dacian king Decebalus, the movie helmet had a flat top, an inaccuracy that entered the vernacular of popular culture. The comic strips "Din zori de istorie", published in late 1970s in "Cutezătorii" magazine, written by Vasile Mănuceanu and drawn by Albin Stănescu, also depicts the helmet with a flat top. It is worn by the Getian king *Odrix* during the conflict with the Persian king Darius I who in 513 BC was campaigning against the Scythians. The action takes place within roughly the period that produced the original helmet. A similar comic strip written by Vasile Mănuceanu and drawn by Sandu Florea depicts the king Burebista wearing the helmet as well.

Mythological scene on the back

8.3 See also

- Getae

8.4 Notes

[1] Berciu 1969, p. 77.

[2] Powell, Brown & Boardman 1971, p. 193.

[3] Powell, Brown & Boardman 1971, p. 193-194.

[4] Polacco 1989, p. 177.

[5] Taylor 1987, p. 127.

[6] Berciu 1969, p. 81.

8.5 References

8.5.1 Modern

- Berciu, Dumitru (1969). *Arta traco-getică* [*Thraco-Getic Art*]. Biblioteca de arheologie (in Romanian). București, Romania: Editura Academiei.
- Polacco, Luigi (1989). *Numismatica e antichità classiche: Volume 18*. Cisalpino.
- Powell, Thomas George Eyre; Brown, M. A.; Boardman, John, eds. (1971). *The European Community in Later Prehistory. Studies in Honour of C.F.C. Hawkes.* Springer Routledge & Kegan Paul Books. ISBN 978-0-7100-6940-5.

- Taylor, Timothy (1987). Hodder, Ian, ed. *The Archaeology of Contextual Meanings*. New Directions in Archaeology. Cambridge University Press. ISBN 978-0-521-32924-8.

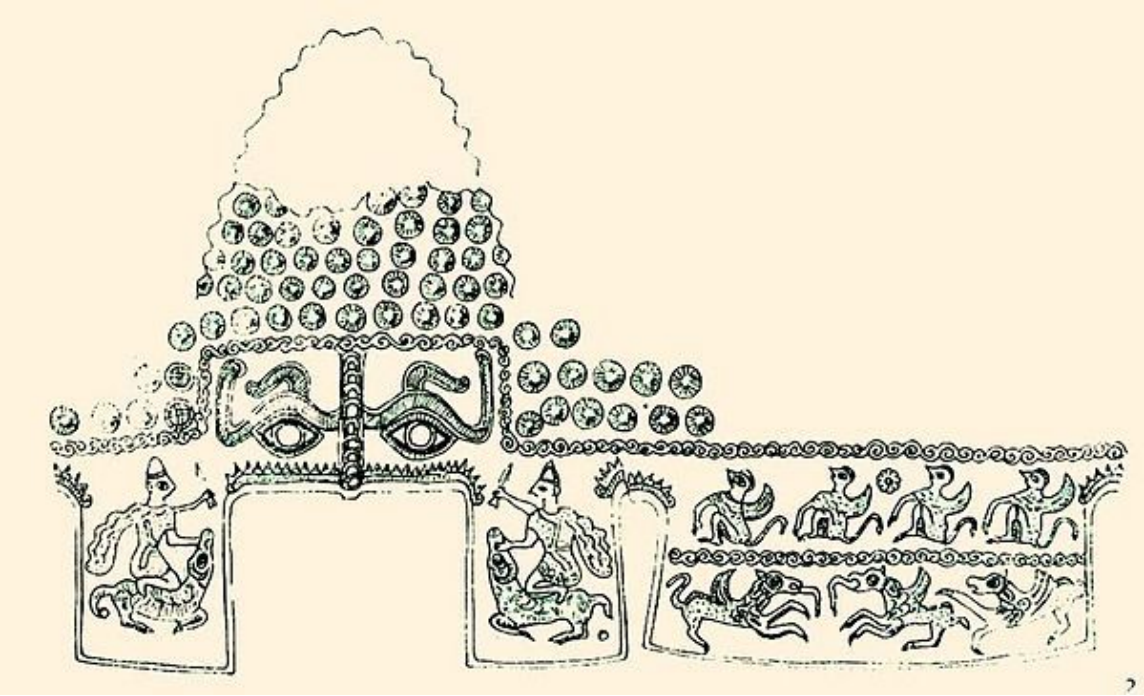
8.6 External links

- Archaeology at Coţofeneşti - cIMeC' Digital Archives of Archaeology
- Synthesis of the monography of Dumbrăveşti commune - Includes a detailed account of the discovery
- Article on the helmet (Romanian)
- Helmet in the comic strips “Din zori de istorie”, published in “Cutezătorii” magazine (Romanian)
- The helmet in 3D by 88millimeters
- Gold and Silver Armour of the Getian-Dacian Elite. Military Equipment and Organization.
- Thracian beaker with birds and animals at the Metropolitan Museum of Art

View with the damaged top.

Silver beaker from Agighiol

Silver beaker from Agighiol



Drawing of the mythological scenes in full

Graphic reconstruction of the damaged helmet, with the scene resembling a Mithraic tauroctony

Incorrectly reconstructed replica, worn by Decebalus in the movie Dacii (The Dacians).

Chapter 9

Helmet of Iron Gates

The **Helmet of Iron Gates** (Romanian: ***Coiful de la Porțile de Fier***) is a Geto-Dacian silver helmet dating from the 4th century BC, housed in the Detroit Institute of Arts, USA.

It probably comes from Iron Gates area, in the Mehedinţi County, Romania. Formerly it was in the collection of Franz Tau, Vienna.

The helmet is similar to the Helmet of Coţofeneşti, Helmet of Peretu, Helmet of Agighiol and Helmet of Cucuteni-Băiceni, all being ancient Getian gold or silver helmets discovered so far on the territory of Romania.

9.1 See also

- Getae
- Dacia
- History of Romania

9.2 Further reading

- *DIA Bulletin*, vol 36, no 3, 1956–57, p 68 (ill).
- Piggott, S., *Ancient Europe*, Chicago: Aldine, 1965, pp 224–6 (ill), as Dacian 3rd-2nd second century B.C.
- Berciu, Dumitru, Arta traco-getică, *Bibliotega de Archeologie*, v 14, Bucharest, Editura Academiei Republicii Socialiste Romania, pp 83–88 (ill).
- Rosu, L., CONSILIUL CULTURII SI EDUCATIEI SOCIALISTE REVISTA MUZEELOR SI MONUMENTALOR, Bucharest, 1975, no 12, 2:55-59 (ill).
- Nickel, H., ULLSTEIN WAFFENBUCH, Frankfurt, 1974, p 60 (ill).
- Farkas, Anne E., "Style and Subject Matter in Native Thracian Art," METROPOLITAN MUSEUM JOURNAL, vol 16, 1981, pp 33–48, p 34 for mention of helmet associated with the Getae and Triballi tribes of northern Thrace.
- Meyers, Pieter, "Three Silver Objects from Thrace: A Technical Examination," METROLPOLITAN MUSEUM JOURNAL, vol 16, 1981, pp 49–54.
- Goldman, B., "A Scythian Helmet from the Danube", *DIA Bulletin*, vol 42, no 4, 1963, pp 63–71 (ill).
- Goldman, B., "Late Scythian Art in the West: The Detroit Helmet," IPEK, vol 22, 1966–69, pp 67–76.
- Rosu, L., "Thraco-Getae-Dacian Art Works In The Detroit Institute of Arts," ROMANIANS CELEBRATING ONTARIO: HERITAGE FESTIVAL, Toronto, 1984, pp 166–168.

Helmet of Iron Gates.

- "Family Art Game: Details, Details, Details," DIA Advertising Supplement, The Detroit Free Press, April 29, 1990, p. 25 (ill.).
- "A Visitors Guide: The Detroit Institute of Arts", ed. Julia P. Henshaw (Detroit 1995), p. 101 (ill.)
- A. Fol et al., "The Rogozen Treasure", Sofia, 1989, p. 42 compares Rogozan Beaker #165 to the Metropolitan Museum beaker, the two cups from Aghigol and the Detroit helmet in the iconography of the horned bird of prey which symbolizes ad deity with supernatural powers to defeat evil. p. 194 Author says that the Metropolitan

Museum beaker and the Detroit helmet may have been found near Rogozen.

- DIA helmet page
- Gold and Silver Armour of the Getian-Dacian Elite. Military Equipment and Organization.
- Article on the helmet (Romanian)

9.3 External links

- DIA helmet page
- Gold and Silver Armour of the Getian-Dacian Elite. Military Equipment and Organization.
- Article on the helmet (Romanian)

Chapter 10

Helmet of Peretu

The **Helmet of Peretu** (Romanian: *Coiful de la Peretu*) is a Geto-Dacian silver helmet dating from the 5th century BC, housed in the National Museum of Romanian History, Bucharest.[1] It comes from Peretu area, in the Teleorman County, Romania. There were 50 artifacts having 750g. The helmet is similar to the Helmet of Coţofeneşti and other three Getian gold or silver helmets discovered so far.

-
-
-

10.1 See also

- Getae

10.2 References

[1] MOSCALU, E., Das thrako-getische Fürstengrab von Peretu in Rumänien. Bericht der Römisch-Germanischen Kommission 70, 1989 (1990)129–190

Helmet of Peretu.

Chapter 11

Meyrick Helmet

The **Meyrick Helmet** is an Iron Age bronze peaked helmet, with La Tène style decoration, that is held at the British Museum in London.[1] It is one of only three Iron Age helmets to have been discovered in Britain, the other two being the more famous Waterloo Helmet and the recently discovered Canterbury Helmet. Unlike the Waterloo Helmet, which bears two cone-shaped horns, the Meyrick Helmet is hornless and appears to be based on a Roman model. Vincent Megaw, emeritus professor of archaeology at the University of Leicester, has conjectured that the helmet may have belonged to a British auxiliary fighting in the Roman army during the campaigns against the Brigantes in AD 71–74.[2]

11.1 Discovery

The provenance of the helmet is unknown, but on stylistic grounds it is thought likely that it comes from the north of England, in the area of Britain controlled by the Brigantes tribe.[2][3][4] The helmet is first recorded as part of the collection of arms and armour accumulated by Sir Samuel Rush Meyrick (1783–1848), and so must have been discovered some time before 1848. It is possible that the helmet came from the Stanwick Hoard of about 140 bronze objects that was found some time between 1843 and 1845 near Stanwick Camp in North Yorkshire, which may have been the *oppidum* of the Brigantes.[5] After Meyrick's death the helmet and other items of Iron Age armour, such as the Witham Shield, were left to his cousin, Lt. Colonel Augustus Meyrick, who disposed of them between 1869 and 1872.[6] The helmet was purchased by Augustus Franks, an independently wealthy antiquarian who worked for the British Museum. Franks donated the helmet to the British Museum in 1872.[5]

11.2 Description

The helmet is considered to be a Celtic version of a Roman auxiliary helmet, combining a Roman shape with La Tène style decoration.[2] It is in the shape of a conical cap with a peaked neck guard. It is made from a single sheet of bronze, possibly spun finished, and has repoussé decoration in the La Tène style, similar to that found on the Waterloo Helmet, on the neck guard and on the fragmentary side pieces. On the neck guard are two flat domed bosses with criss-cross grooves which would originally have held red glass enamel studs. There are holes on either side for attachment to a chin-strap or cheekpiece, and a hole at the top of the helmet for the attachment of a plumed top-knot. On the outer margin of the helmet are incised two strokes which could represent the Roman number "II".[2]

11.3 See also

- Waterloo Helmet

11.4 References

[1] "helmet". British Museum. Retrieved 2010-09-16.

[2] Megaw, J. V. S. (1970). *Art of the European Iron Age: a study of the elusive image*. Adams & Dart. p. 173.

[3] MacGregor, Morna (1976). *Early Celtic art in North Britain: a study of decorative metalwork from the third century B.C. to the third century A.D.* Leicester University Press. pp. 89–90. ISBN 978-0-7185-1135-7.

[4] Potter, Timothy W. (1997). *Roman Britain*. Harvard University Press. p. 11. ISBN 978-0-674-77767-5.

[5] Spratling, M. G. (1981). "Metalworking At The Stanwick Oppidum: Some New Evidence". *Yorkshire Archaeological Journal* **53**: 14. ISSN 0084-4276.

[6] "Samuel Rush Meyrick". Royal Armouries. Retrieved 20 September 2010.

11.5 External links

- British Museum record

Chapter 12

Newstead Helmet

Coordinates: 55°36′07″N 2°41′06″W / 55.602°N 2.685°W The **Newstead Helmet** is an iron Roman cavalry helmet dating to 80–100 AD that was discovered at the site of a Roman fort in Newstead, near Melrose in Roxburghshire, Scotland in 1905. It is now part of the Newstead Collection at the National Museum in Edinburgh.[1] The helmet would have been worn by auxiliary cavalrymen in cavalry displays known as *hippika gymnasia*. Its discoverer, Sir James Curle (1862–1944), described the helmet as "one of the most beautiful things that the receding tide of Roman conquest has left behind".[2]

12.1 Discovery

The helmet was discovered during excavations by James Curle during 1905 at the Roman fort of Trimontium, which is located near the triple peak of Eildon Hill at Newstead, after which the fort is named (Trimontium meaning "three hills"). During excavations between February 1905 and September 1910, Curle discovered a large number of Roman military artefacts at the fort, including items of Roman armour, horse harnesses, saddle plates, and several ornate bronze and iron cavalry helmets for parade use.[3] Only one helmet found in 1905 is largely complete and preserves the face mask, and this is known as "the Newstead Helmet". This helmet was discovered in a pit dating to the Flavian period (69–96) in the south annexe of the fort.[4]

12.2 Description

The helmet is in two pieces, comprising a head-piece and a face mask, both of which are made of beaten iron. Prior to its discovery the helmet had been squashed by heavy stones, resulting in serious damage to parts of the helmet, including the destruction of most of the upper portion above the forehead, and the breaking in two of the mask.[2] There is a rim at the back of the headpiece by the neck, to which is attached a thin bronze plate with an embossed chevron pattern, but this decoration is not as fine as elsewhere on the helmet.[2] There are traces of silver or tin plating on the outer surface, and remnants of a woollen lining on the inner surface.[1] The mask shows the face of a youth with curly hair held in a laurel wreath, which suggests a Celtic influence.[4] On the left side of the head-piece is attached a tube that would have held ornamental plumes, as described by Arrian of Nicomedia:[5]

> The horsemen enter fully armed and those of distinguished station or superior in horsemanship wear gilded helmets of iron or bronze, to draw to themselves the gaze of the spectators. Unlike the helmets made for active service, these do not cover the heads and cheeks only but are made to fit round the faces of the riders with apertures for the eyes, so as to give protection to the eyes without interfering with vision. From the helmets hang yellow plumes — a matter of decor as much as of utility. As the horses move forward, the slightest breeze adds to the beauty of these plumes.[5]

Bronze helmet with no visor-mask, also found at Newstead, showing a naked winged figure of Cupid driving a chariot.

12.3 Other helmets

Two other helmets were discovered in the same pit (Pit XXII) as the iron helmet with a face mask described above, and a bronze visor-mask was found in a pit in the bath buildings:

Bronze visor-mask with no helmet from Newstead

- An ornately decorated bronze helmet, with a design embossed in relief on one side showing a naked winged figure of Cupid driving a chariot pulled by a pair of leopards, while on the other side another winged figure, probably personifying Victory, holds what may be a palm branch in one hand and the leopards' harness in the other hand. It is probable that it would have originally been fitted with a face visor, but this is missing. On the rim at the back of the helmet is a punctured inscription of eight letters punched into the metal. The first four letters of the inscription are uncertain, but the last four letters read "TGES", which may stand for *T[urmae]* ("of the troop") followed by the name the commander of the troop, which is a formula found elsewhere.[6]

- A plain iron legionary helmet with two hinged cheek pieces.[7]

- A bronze visor-mask showing a youthful, beardless face with curly locks of hair. There is a hole beneath each ear, which may have been used to attach the mask to a helmet.[8]

12.4 References

[1] "Parade helmet and face mask". National Museums Scotland. Retrieved 2010-09-14.

[2] Curle, James (1911). *A Roman Frontier Post and its People: The Fort of Newstead in the Parish of Melrose*. Maclehose and Sons. pp. 168–170.

[3] "Newstead". SCRAN/RCAHMS. Retrieved 210-09-14. Check date values in: |accessdate= (help)

[4] Henig, Martin (1996). *The Art of Roman Britain*. Routledge. p. 55. ISBN 978-0-415-15136-8.

[5] Dixon, Karen R.; Southern, Pat (1997). *The Roman Cavalry: from the first to the third century AD*. Routledge. p. 128. ISBN 978-0-415-17039-0.

[6] Curle, James (1911). *A Roman Frontier Post and its People: The Fort of Newstead in the Parish of Melrose*. Maclehose and Sons. pp. 166–168.

[7] Curle, James (1911). *A Roman Frontier Post and its People: The Fort of Newstead in the Parish of Melrose*. Maclehose and Sons. pp. 164–166.

[8] Curle, James (1911). *A Roman Frontier Post and its People: The Fort of Newstead in the Parish of Melrose*. Maclehose and Sons. pp. 170–171.

12.5 External Links

Roman cavalry sports helmets from Newstead in the National Museum of Scotland

Chapter 13

Nijmegen Helmet

The **Nijmegen Helmet** is an Ancient Roman helmet, found in a gravel bed on the left bank of Waal river, near the Dutch city of Nijmegen in 1915. The helmet would have been worn by the elite Roman cavalry.[1] The head portion of the helmet is made of iron, while the mask and diadem are of bronze or brass. The helmet has a neck-protecting projecting rim, overlaid with a thin bronze covering plated with silver.[2] The diadem features two male and three female figures.

The helmet sustained oxidisation.[2] Several other Roman sports helmets have also been found in or near Nijmegen.[3]

13.1 References

[1] "Roman helmet to go on show in Carlisle museum". *News and Star*. Retrieved 2 November 2011.

[2] James Curle, "On a Roman Visor Helmet Recently Discovered near Nijmegen", *The Journal of Roman Studies*, vol. 5, 1915

[3] W.J.H. Willems, "Roman face masks from the Kops Plateau, Nijmegen, The Netherlands", *Journal of Roman Military Equipment Studies*, 3, 1992, p. 61

Chapter 14

Pioneer Helmet

The **Pioneer Helmet** (also known as **Wollaston Helmet** or **Northamptonshire Helmet**) is a 7th-century Anglo-Saxon boar-crested helm found by archaeologists from Northamptonshire Archaeology at a quarry site operated by Pioneer Aggregates. This helmet is very similar in its basic design to the Coppergate Helmet, although it is much larger, and was likely to have had two cheek plates (of which only one remained) and a nasal (which was bent inwards at the time of deposition to render the piece unwearable). A simple iron boar crest adorns the top of this helmet associating it with the Benty Grange helmet from the same period, and descriptions in the poem Beowulf. The helmet accompanied the burial of a young male, possibly laid on a bed with a pattern welded sword, small knife, hanging bowl, three iron buckles and a copper alloy clothes hook.

The fragments of this helmet were found during excavations at Wollaston, Northamptonshire on a site operated by Pioneer Aggregates. The helm bears that company's name in recognition of its financial support towards restoration and conservation work.[1]

After restoration this helmet was originally on display at the Royal Armouries (Leeds) alongside a replica, and the British Museum; it is currently (2010) back at the Royal Armouries.

14.1 See also

- Viking Age arms and armour

14.2 References

[1] "archeology.org article on the find". Retrieved 14 November 2010.

Chapter 15

Ribchester Helmet

The **Ribchester Helmet** is a Roman bronze ceremonial helmet dating to between the late 1st and early 2nd centuries AD, which is now on display at the British Museum.[1] It was found in Ribchester, Lancashire, England in 1796, as part of the **Ribchester Hoard**. The model of a sphinx that was believed to attach to the helmet was lost.[2]

15.1 Description

The helmet was impractical for protecting a soldier in battle. The helmet was intended to be used in displays of professionalism known as *hippika gymnasia* or cavalry sports.

15.2 Provenance

The helmet was discovered, part of the Ribchester Hoard, in the summer of 1796 by the son of Joseph Walton, a clogmaker. The boy found the items buried in a hollow, about three metres below the surface, on some waste land by the side of a road leading to Ribchester church, and near a river bed.[3] The hoard was thought to have been stored in a wooden box and consisted of the corroded remains of a number of items but the largest was this helmet.[1] In addition to the helmet, the hoard included a number of paterae, pieces of a vase, a bust of Minerva, fragments of two basins, several plates, and some other items that the antiquarian collector Charles Townley thought had religious uses. The finds were thought to have survived so well because they were covered in sand.[3]

The helmet and other items were bought from Walton by Townley, who lived nearby at Towneley Hall. Townley was a well-known collector of Roman sculpture and antiquities, who had himself and his collection recorded in an oil painting by Johann Zoffany. Townley reported the details of the find in a detailed letter to the secretary of the Society of Antiquaries, intended for publication in the Society's *Proceedings*: it was his only publication.[3] The helmet, together with the rest of Townley's collection, was sold to the British Museum in 1814 by his cousin, Peregrine Edward Towneley, who had inherited the collection on Townley's death in 1805.[4]

In addition to the items purchased by Townley, there was also originally a bronze figurine of a sphinx,[2] but it was lost after Walton gave it to the children of one of his brothers to play with.[5] It was suggested by Thomas Dunham Whitaker, who examined the hoard soon after it had been discovered, that the sphinx would have been attached to the top of the helmet, as it has a curved base fitting the curvature of the helmet, and has traces of solder on it.[6] This theory has become more plausible with the discovery of the Crosby Garrett Helmet in 2010, to which is attached a winged griffin.[7]

15.3 Importance

Only three Roman helmets with a covering over the face have been found in Britain. Prior to the 2010 discovery of the Crosby Garrett Helmet and the 1905 discovery of the Newstead Helmet this helmet was described as the highest quality helmet found. The Ribchester helmet was found corroded but, like the Newstead helmet, largely complete, whereas the Crosby Garret helmet was found in 67 fragments.[8]

An engraving by James Basire for Charles Townley.

It is known that these helmets were used for display because of accounts left by Arrian of Nicomedia, who was a governor in the time of Emperor Hadrian.[9] Arrian describes how soldiers of high rank or with particular skills were

Replica on display at the Ribchester Roman Museum

allowed to wear these helmets in the *hippika gymnasia* or cavalry tournaments.

The helmet was voted Britain's *"second best Roman find"*, behind the Vindolanda tablets, according to a web site poll by the Channel 4 television programme *Time Team*.[10]

15.4 References

[1] "Cavalry sports helmet". British Museum. Retrieved September 2010.

[2] Clarke, Stephen Reynolds (1830). *The new Lancashire gazetteer: or, Topographical dictionary page 146*. H. Tessdale and Co.

[3] Baines, Edward; Whatton, W. R. (1836). *History of the County Palatine and Duchy of Lancaster*. Fisher, Son and Co. p. 20.

[4] "Biographical details of Peregrine Edward Towneley". British Museum. Retrieved 2010-09-14.

[5] Smith, Thomas Charles (1890). *The history of the parish of Ribchester, in the county of Lancaster*. Bemrose & sons. p. 35.

[6] Watkin, William Thompson (1883). *Roman Lancashire: or, A description of Roman remains in the County Palatine of Lancaster*. p. 154.

[7] Jackson, Ralph (9 September 2010). "Roman Cavalry Sports helmet from Crosby Garrett, Cumbria" (PDF). Retrieved 2010-09-14.

[8] Pett, Daniel (13 September 2010). "Exceptional Roman cavalry helmet discovered in Cumbria". Portable Antiquities Scheme. Retrieved 2010-09-13.

[9] "Rare Roman helmet and face-mask discovered". *Daily Telegraph*. 13 September 2010. Retrieved 14 September 2010.

[10] Big Roman Dig, Channel 4, Time Team, accessed September 2010

Chapter 16

Shorwell Helmet

The **Shorwell Helmet** is an Anglo-Saxon spangenhelm type helmet found near Shorwell on the Isle of Wight in 2006.

16.1 Discovery

The helmet was discovered in 2006 at Shorwell, Isle of Wight. Originally, it, together with the Burgh helm, was mistaken as a cooking pot. In 2012, however, metallurgical analysis revealed that the object was in fact a helmet, constructed in the spangenhelm style of the Late Roman/Early Medieval period. The helmet, like the one found at Sutton Hoo, was in many fragments, and was heavily corroded. It is currently under conservation in the British Museum.

16.2 Description

The helmet is a typical spangenhelm, in the Frankish style. It is constructed of four metal plates, bound together with an iron band around the rim, two on each side of the helmet dome, and a single band reaching over the top from front to back. It has no cheekpieces or nasal bar, and has no decoration, perhaps indicating it was worn by a less wealthy warrior than the wearers of the Coppergate or Sutton Hoo helmets. The helmet was found with a sword and a spear, and also a shield and several arm rings, belt buckes and hand rings. The quality of the equipment suggests that this man was a minor noble, a Thegn, who would have been the local landowner or chief.

16.3 See also

Sutton Hoo helmet

Anglo-Saxon warfare

Anglo-Saxon military organisation

Gothic and Vandal warfare

16.4 References

- http://www.britishmuseum.org/research/collection_online/collection_object_details.aspx?objectId=3048650&partId=1
- http://thethegns.blogspot.co.uk/2012/12/finally-english-spangenhelm-shorwell.html

Chapter 17

Waterloo Helmet

The **Waterloo Helmet** (also known as the **Waterloo Bridge Helmet**) is a pre-Roman Celtic bronze ceremonial horned helmet with repoussé decoration in the La Tène style, dating to c.150–50 BC, that was found in 1868 in the River Thames by Waterloo Bridge in London, England. It is now on display at the British Museum in London.[1]

17.1 Discovery

The helmet was dredged from the bed of the River Thames close to Waterloo Bridge in 1868, and in March of the same year it was put on loan at the British Museum by Thames Conservancy. In 1988 its successor body, the Port of London Authority, donated the helmet to the British Museum.[2]

17.2 Description

The main part of the helmet is constructed from two sheets of bronze, one forming the front and one the back of the helmet, that are riveted together at the sides and top. A separate crescent-shaped bronze piece is riveted to the bottom of the front sheet, and two conical bronze horns with terminal knobs are riveted to the top of the helmet. A decorative strip with a row of rivets overlays the join between the front and back sheets, and goes around the base of the horns. At the end of the strip, on both sides of the helmet, is a ring fitting for a chin-strap or cheekpiece. There are a number of small holes around the bottom edge, which may have been used to attach a lining.[2]

The helmet was decorated with six bronze studs, one of which is now missing, three on the front and three on the back. These have cross scores on them that suggest they were designed to hold red glass enamel studs, but these are no longer present.[2]

There is also a repoussé decoration in the La Tène style on the front and back of the helmet. The design is similar to that on the Snettisham Great Torc.[2]

17.3 Purpose

Being made from thin bronze sheets, the helmet would have been too fragile for use in battle, and so it was probably intended to be used for ceremonial or parade purposes.[3] In this respect it is similar to Iron Age bronze shields that have been found, which would not have been effective weapons and could only have been used for display purposes. Alternatively, it has been suggested that the helmet is in any case too small for most adult males, and may have been worn by a wooden statue of a Celtic deity.[4]

It is thought that the reason why the Waterloo Helmet and ceremonial bronze shields such as the Battersea Shield and Witham Shield were all found in rivers is that they were thrown into the river as votive offerings to the gods.[5]

17.4 Importance

Plate C of the Gundestrup cauldron, showing a man in a horned helmet holding a wheel

The Waterloo Helmet is one of only three Iron Age helmets found in England and also the only horned helmet dating to the Iron Age to have been found anywhere in Europe.[1] However, there are several Iron Age depictions of people wearing horned helmets from elsewhere in Europe. There are some carvings of Gauls wearing horned helmets on the triumphal arch at Orange, France, dating to c.55 BC, but these are very different from the Waterloo Helmet. Whereas the Waterloo Helmet has straight, conical horns with a broad base that are stylised representations of animal horns, the helmets depicted on the carvings at Orange show realistic, curved bull's horns between which is placed an upright wheel.[6] Similar to the depictions on the triumphal arch of Orange is the image of a leaping figure wearing a horned helmet and holding a wheel on the Gundestrup cauldron from Denmark, dating to the 1st century BC. This helmet is of a different shape from the Waterloo Helmet, and the horns are curved like those at Orange, but like the Waterloo Helmet the horns of the helmet are not sharply pointed, but are fitted with terminal knobs.[7] An Iron Age bas-relief at Brague, near Antibes in France, also shows representations of people wearing horned helmets.[7]

Despite the depictions of horned helmets on the triumphal arch of Orange and elsewhere, the Waterloo Helmet remains the only known example of an actual horned helmet from this period, and other Iron Age helmets that have been found, such as the Canterbury Helmet and the Meyrick Helmet from northern Britain, are hornless. Nevertheless, influenced by the iconic features of the Waterloo Helmet, modern artistic interpretations of Iron Age people tend to show them wearing horned helmets, which has led Miranda Aldhouse-Green, professor of archaeology at Cardiff University, to comment that it is "unfortunate that it has found such a firm place in many popular reconstructions of British warriors".[8]

17.5 Gallery of reconstructions

- American reenactor

17.6 References

[1] "Horned helmet". British Museum. Retrieved 2010-09-15.

[2] "The Waterloo Helmet". British Museum. Retrieved 2010-09-14.

[3] Harding, Dennis William (2007). *The Archaeology of Celtic Art*. Taylor & Francis. p. 18. ISBN 978-0-415-42866-8.

[4] Lloyd Laing and Jennifer Laing. *Art of the Celts: From 700 BC to the Celtic Revival*, p. 110, 1992, Thames & Hudson (World of Art), ISBN 0-500-20256-7

[5] *The British Museum and its Collections*. British Museum Publications. 1982. p. 172. ISBN 978-0-7141-2017-1.

[6] Aldhouse-Green, Miranda Jane (1992). *Animals in Celtic Life and Myth*. Routledge. p. 134. ISBN 978-0-415-05030-2.

[7] Olmsted, Garrett S. (1979). *The Gundestrup cauldron: its archaeological context, the style and iconography of its portrayed motifs, and their narration of a Gaulish version of Táin bó Cúalnge*. Latomus. p. 24. ISBN 978-2-87031-102-8.

[8] Aldhouse-Green, Miranda Jane (1995). *The Celtic World*. Routledge. p. 44. ISBN 978-0-415-05764-6.

17.7 See also

- Canterbury Helmet
- Battersea shield
- Wandsworth Shield
- Witham Shield

17.8 External links

- Horned helmet at the British Museum

Chapter 18

Attic helmet

The **attic helmet** was a type of helmet that originated in Classical Greece and was widely used in Italy and the Hellenistic world until well into the Roman Empire."Terms such as Illyrian and attic are used in archaeology for convenience to denote a particular type of helmet and do not imply its origin".[1]

The attic helmet was similar to the Chalcidian helmet but lacked a nose-guard. Although in Greece itself its use was not as widespread as the Corinthian or Phrygian types, the attic helmet became very popular in Italy, where most examples have been found. Many Italian peoples used variations of the attic helmet, but archaeologically it has been especially prominent in Samnite and Lucanian burials and their associated art (frescos etc.).[2]

As an artistic motif, variations of the attic helmet long outlasted other contemporary helmet types, being used to impart an archaic look to depictions of generals, emperors and Praetorians (example) throughout the Hellenistic and Roman periods. As such, a form of attic helmet has become part of the popular image of a Roman officer, as found in art from the Renaissance onwards or in earlier Hollywood productions. However, no archaeological remains of this type of helmet have been found to date. The closest surviving Imperial Roman helmet to the type illustrated in relief sculpture dates to the 2nd century AD, and was found in Bavaria. It has been classified as a "pseudo-attic" helmet by some scholars. It is of tinned bronze and is very elaborately decorated with an integral crest raised from the skull incorporating an eagle.[3]

18.1 References

[1] Connoly, p. 60

[2] Connoly, pp. 61-63, 107-109

[3] Connoly, p. 237

18.2 Bibliography

- Connolly, P. (1981) *Greece and Rome at War.* Macdonald Phoebus, London. ISBN 1-85367-303-X

A ceremonial Attic helmet from Southern Italy, ca. 300 BC

Roman "pseudo-attic" helmet, 2nd Century AD

Chapter 19

Boar's tusk helmet

Helmets using ivory from boar's tusks were known in the Mycenaean world from the 17th century BC (Shaft Graves, Mycenae[1][2]) to the 10th century BC (Elateia, Central Greece). The helmet was made through the use of slivers of boar tusks which were attached to a leather base, padded with felt, in rows. A description of a boar's tusk helmet appears in book ten of Homer's *Iliad*, as Odysseus is armed for a night raid to be conducted against the Trojans.

> Meriones gave Odysseus a bow, a quiver and a sword, and put a cleverly made leather helmet on his head. On the inside there was a strong lining on interwoven straps, onto which a felt cap had been sewn in. The outside was cleverly adorned all around with rows of white tusks from a shiny-toothed boar, the tusks running in alternate directions in each row.
> —Homer, *Iliad* 10.260–5

> Μηριόνης δ' Ὀδυσῆϊ δίδου βιὸν ἠδὲ φαρέτρην / καὶ ξίφος, ἀμφὶ δέ οἱ κυνέην κεφαλῆφιν ἔθηκε / ῥινοῦ ποιητήν: πολέσιν δ' ἔντοσθεν ἱμᾶσιν / ντέτατο στερεῶς: ἔκτοσθε δὲ λευκοὶ ὀδόντες / ἀργιόδοντος ὑὸς θαμέες ἔχον ἔνθα καὶ ἔνθα / εὖ καὶ ἐπισταμένως μέσσῃ δ' ἐνὶ πῖλος ἀρήρει.

Fragments of ivory which might have come from helmets of this kind have been discovered on Mycenaean sites (at Dendra, for instance, fragments were found alongside the bronze panoply excavated in 1960) and an ivory plaque, also from a Mycenaean site, represents a helmet of this kind. Although they would not provide as good protection as a metal helmet, they may have been worn by some leaders as a status symbol, or a means of identification.

Homer specifies that the helmet given by Meriones to Odysseus was an heirloom, passed down through the generations, a detail which perhaps suggests its value. Although the number of plates required to make an entire helmet varies - anything from 40 to 140 can be required[3] - it has been estimated that forty to fifty boars would have to be killed to make just one helmet.[4]

19.1 References

[1] The Shaft Graves, Dartmouth College

[2] Nobuo Komita, The Grave Circles at Mycenae and the Early Indo-Europeans

[3] Kilian-Dirlmeier, I (1997). *Das mittelbronzezeitliche Schachtgrab von Aegina*. Mainz. p. 46.

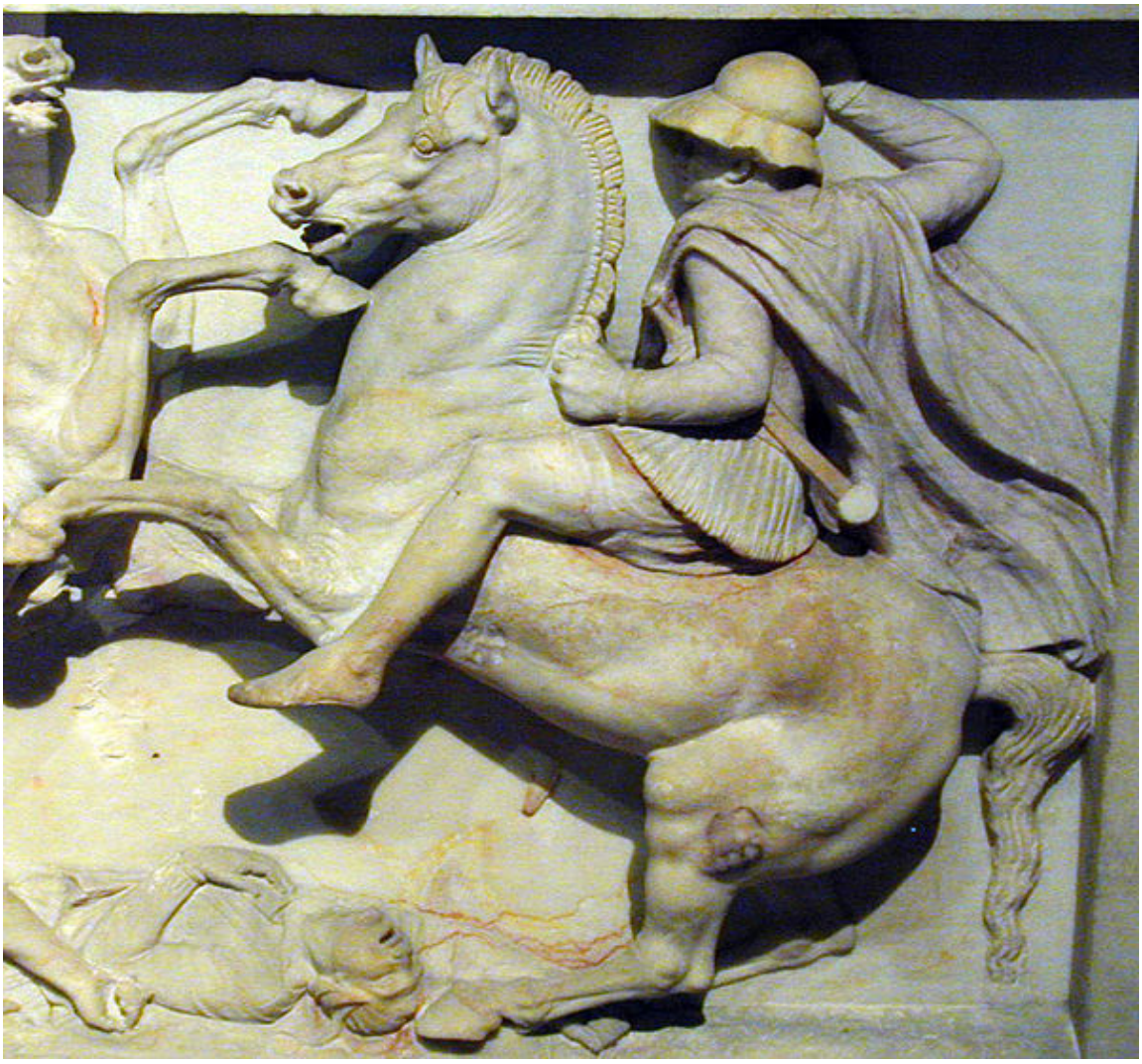
[4] Everson, Tim (2004). *Warfare in Ancient Greece: Arms and Armour from the Heroes of Homer to Alexander the Great*. The History Press. pp. 9–10.

Mycenaean Greek boar tusk helmet from Mycenae, 14th century BC. On display at the National Archaeological Museum, Athens.

Boar tusk helmet, Heraklion Archaeological Museum

Chapter 20

Boeotian helmet



Thessalian cavalryman from the Alexander Sarcophagus, wearing a Boeotian helmet.

The **Boeotian helmet** was a type of helmet that was used in Classical Antiquity and the Hellenistic period; it possibly originated in the Greek region of Boeotia.

20.1 Characteristics

The Boeotian helmet was an open helmet, allowing good peripheral vision and unimpaired hearing. It had a domed skull surrounded by a wide, flaring, down-sloping brim. The brim came down at the rear to protect the back of the neck, projected forward over the forehead and was worked into a complex shape at the sides, with downward pointing folds affording some lateral protection to the face. A long falling plume was sometimes attached to this type of helmet. The need for unimpeded vision and good hearing was particularly acute for cavalrymen, therefore this type of helmet was used primarily by mounted troops.[1] It was modelled on the shape of a folded-down Boeotian variant of the *petasos*, a type of Greek sun hat, usually made of felt.[2]

This type of helmet was beaten from a single sheet of bronze using a helmet-shaped “former,” one of which, made of limestone, is extant. An excellently preserved example of this type of helmet, now in the Ashmolean Museum, was recovered from the Tigris River in Iraq. It may have belonged to one of Alexander the Great’s cavalrymen. In Late Hellenistic times the Boeotian helmet evolved into a type with a taller, more conical skull and often a reduced brim.[3]

20.2 Use

Altar of Domitius Ahenobarbus, Roman late 2nd Century BC. The soldier holding his horse at the right wears a plumed Boeotian helmet.

The Athenian military expert and author Xenophon particularly recommended the Boeotian helmet for cavalry, saying "...the Boeotian type [of helmet]. For this not only gives the greatest protection to all the parts above the cuirass, but allows free vision.” This piece of advice was taken up by Alexander the Great, who equipped his cavalry with this helmet.[4] Both the Alexander sarcophagus and Alexander mosaic show cavalrymen of the Ancient Macedonian army wearing Boeotian helmets.[5] As a specialised cavalry helmet its use was not as widespread as some other ancient helmets, such as the Corinthian or Phrygian types. The helmet was used by Roman citizen cavalry in the Republican period. On the Altar of Domitius Ahenobarbus, Gnaeus Domitius Ahenobarbus was consul in 122 BC, a Roman cavalryman is depicted wearing one (with the later more conical skull and furnished with a falling horsehair plume).

The naming conventions and typology of ancient helmets are largely of modern origin and do not reflect contemporary usage; “Terms such as 'Illyrian' and 'Attic' are used in archaeology for convenience to denote a particular type of helmet

and do not imply its origin."[6] The term 'Boeotian helmet', however, is an exception: it was employed by Xenophon and is therefore of contemporary usage. Another piece of martial equipment linked to the region of Boeotia is the Boeotian shield; however, no surviving examples have been found, and its association with the region is largely through depictions on local coinage.

20.3 References

[1] Anderson, pp. 147- 148.

[2] Sekunda, p. 69

[3] Connolly, p. 73.

[4] Anderson, pp. 147.

[5] Connolly, p. 72.

[6] Connolly, p. 60

20.4 Bibliography

- Anderson, J.K, (1961) *Ancient Greek Horsemanship*, Berkeley and Los Angeles.
- Connolly, P. (1981) *Greece and Rome at War.* Macdonald Phoebus, London. ISBN 1-85367-303-X
- Sekunda, N. (2002) *Marathon 490 BC: The First Persian Invasion Of Greece.* Osprey Publishing.

Chapter 21

Chalcidian helmet

A **Chalcidian helmet** or **Chalcidian type helmet** was a helmet made of bronze and worn by ancient warriors of the Hellenic world, especially popular in Greece in the fifth and fourth centuries BC. The helmet was also worn extensively in the Greek (Southern) parts of Italy in the same period.

21.1 Terminology

The helmet is so-called because it was first, and is most commonly, depicted on pottery once thought to derive from the Euboean city of Chalcis. In fact, it is not known whether the helmet actually originated in Chalcis; indeed, it is not known whether the pottery in question was actually Chalcidian.

21.2 Description

The helmet appears to have been a development of the Corinthian helmet, its improvements in design giving the wearer better hearing and vision, resulting in a lighter and less bulky helmet.

It consisted of a hemispherical dome, and below that, generally inset from the top dome, a pair of cheek pieces and a neck guard, with a substantial loop on either side for the wearer's ears. In the front, between the two cheek pieces, was a small nasal bar to protect the wearer's nose. The helmet could be entirely one piece, or the cheek pieces could be attached separately by hinges, which eased construction and made putting the helmet on easier. In Italy, the helmet with fixed cheek pieces is referred to as Chalcidian, its variant with hinged cheek pieces is called a Lucanian helmet because it was widely used in Lucania.

The helmet would commonly have a hole pierced on each cheek piece or elsewhere in order to accept an inner lining which was made of leather. Adornments such as combs and other protuberances were usually placed on the top of the helmet.

21.3 Usage

By the time of Alexander the Great, the helmet was still worn by armoured soldiers, especially Hoplites, the spear-armed heavy infantrymen (other than those of the Spartans, who instead wore the much plainer pilos helmet). It is likely that some of the Macedonian soldiers who ruled the rest of Greece and went on to forge a substantial Hellenistic empire also wore the Chalcidian helmet. The helmet is thought to have developed in turn into the Attic helmet which is iconic of classical soldiers.

21.4 Sources

- Heckel, Waldemar, and Jones, Ryan. *Macedonian Warrior: Alexander's Elite Infantryman*. Osprey Publishing, 2006. ISBN 1-84176-950-9

Chalcidian type helmet, circa 500 BC, exhibit in The Walters Art Gallery, Baltimore.

- Horsnaes, Helle W. *The Cultural Development in North Western Lucania C. 600-273 BC.* L'Erma di Bretschnei-

A Chaldician helmet made of bronze; second half of the 6th century BC.

der, 2002. ISBN 88-8265-194-0

- Sekunda, Nicholas. *Greek Hoplite, 480-323 BC: 480-323 BC*. Osprey Publishing, 2000. ISBN 1-85532-867-4

Chalcidian pottery depicting Heracles fighting the monster Geryon, each of whose three heads is wearing a Chalcidian helmet.

Chalcidian type helmet, circa 400 BC, discovered on north of Danube.

Chapter 22

Coolus helmet

The **Coolus helmet** was a type of ancient Celtic and Roman helmet. It was produced from brass and, like the Montefortino type with which it co-existed, was a descendent of Celtic helmet types.

It was fairly plain, except for some ridges or raised panels on the cheekpieces. It was globular or hemispherical in shape (some were spun on a lathe rather than hammered to shape) with a turned or cast soldered- or riveted-on crest knob.

The Coolus was replaced by the Imperial helmet type, a more developed form also derived from a Celtic original.

22.1 Sources

- Legio II Augusta
- Legio XXIV

Bronze Gallic helmet, Coolus-Manheim-type; From the region of Tongeren, Belgium; Now in the Musée du Cinquantenaire, Brussels.

Chapter 23

Corinthian helmet

The **Corinthian helmet** originated in ancient Greece and took its name from the city-state of Corinth. It was a helmet made of bronze which in its later styles covered the entire head and neck, with slits for the eyes and mouth. A large curved projection protected the nape of the neck.

Out of combat, a Greek hoplite would wear the helmet tipped upward for comfort. This practice gave rise to a series of variant forms in Italy, where the slits were almost closed, since the helmet was no longer pulled over the face but worn cap-like. Although the classical Corinthian helmet fell out of use among the Greeks in favour of more open types, the Italo-Corinthian types remained in use until the 1st century AD, being used, among others, by the Roman army.

23.1 Physical evidence

Apparently (judging from artistic and archaeological evidence) the most popular helmet during the Archaic and early Classical periods, the style gradually gave way to the more open Thracian helmet, Chalcidian helmet and the much simpler pilos type, which was less expensive to manufacture and did not obstruct the wearer's critical senses of vision and hearing as the Corinthian helmet did. Numerous examples of Corinthian helmets have been excavated, and they are frequently depicted on pottery.

The Corinthian helmet was depicted on more sculpture than any other helmet; it seems the Greeks romantically associated it with glory and the past. The Romans also revered it, from copies of Greek originals to sculpture of their own. From the sparse pictorial evidence we have of the republican Roman army, it seems that in Italy the Corinthian helmet evolved into a jockey-cap style helmet called the **Italo-Corinthian**, **Etrusco-Corinthian** or **Apulo-Corinthian helmet**, with the characteristic nose guard and eye slits becoming mere decorations on its face. Given many Roman appropriations of ancient Greek ideas, this change was probably inspired by the "over the forehead" position common in Greek art. This helmet remained in use well into the 1st century AD.

23.2 Literary evidence

Herodotus mentions the Corinthian helmet in his *Histories* when writing of the Machlyes and Auseans, two tribes living along the River Triton in ancient Libya (the portion of ancient Libya he describes is most likely in modern Tunisia). The tribes chose annually two teams of the fairest maidens who fought each other ceremonially with sticks and stones. They were dressed in the finest Greek panoply topped off with a Corinthian helmet. The ritual fight was part of a festival honoring the virgin goddess Athena. Young women who succumbed to their wounds during the ordeal were thought to have been punished by the goddess for lying about their virginity (*Histories, 4.180*).

23.3 In Popular Culture

- An earlier version of the Corinthian helmet is habitually worn by the Marvel Comics super villain Magneto.

Bronze Corinthian helmet, ca. 500 BC, Staatliche Antikensammlungen (Inv. 4330)

- The Star Wars character, Boba Fett, also wears a helmet with a T-shaped visor that vaguely resembles the Corinthian helmet, as do most other Mandalorians and Phase I Clonetroopers within the franchise.

Italo-Corinthian helmet, Getty Villa

The coat of arms of the United States Military Academy features a Corinthian helmet

23.4 Related reading

Lendon, J.E., *Soldiers and Ghosts, A History of Battle in Classical Antiquity* (2005)

23.5 References

23.6 External links

- Herodotus's account of the Libyan female warriors in Corinthian helmets - via the Perseus Project

Chapter 24

Galea (helmet)

A **galea** was a Roman soldier's helmet. Some gladiators, myrmillones, also wore a bronze galea with a face mask and a decoration, often a fish on its crest.[1] The exact form or design of the helmet varied significantly over time, between differing unit types, and also between individual examples - pre-industrial production was by hand – so it is not certain to what degree there was any standardization even under the Roman Empire.

Originally, Roman helmets were influenced by the neighboring Etruscans, people who utilised the "Nasua" type helmets. The Greeks in the south also influenced Roman design in the early history of Rome. For instance, the ancestor of the Chalcidian helmet, the Attic helmet, was widely used by officers until the end of the empire.[2] Lastly, the Gauls were the peoples who most impacted the design of the Roman helmet hence the popular "Imperial Gallic" type helmets. In addition to this, it is commonly thought that the Gauls also introduced chainmail to the Romans.[3]

The primary evidence is scattered archaeological finds, which are often damaged or incomplete. There are similarities of form and function between them.

24.1 Helmet types

H. Russell Robinson in his book *The Armour of Imperial Rome*, published in 1975, classified into broad divisions the various forms of helmets that were found. He classified four main types of helmets for heavy infantry (with subcategories named with letters) and 30 different types of cheek guards.

Helmets used by gladiators were quite different from military versions.

24.1.1 Legionary infantry helmets

- Montefortino helmet (4th century BC - 1st century AD)
- Coolus helmet (3rd century BC - at least 79 AD)
- Imperial Gallic helmet (late 1st century BC - early 2nd century AD)
- Imperial Italic helmet (late 1st BC - early 3rd century AD)
- Ridge helmet, first depicted on coins of 4th-century AD emperor Constantine I.

24.2 Helmet crests

Some of the helmets used by legionaries had a crest holder.[4] The crests were usually made of plumes or horse hair.

There is some evidence (Vegetius writings and some sculptures) that legionaries had their crests mounted longitudinally and centurions had them mounted transversely.

Modern reconstruction of a centurion helmet, first century. Notice the embossed eyebrows and the circular brass bosses typical of the Imperial Gallic helmets.

24.3 References

[1] Kennett, Basil. “Romae antiquae notitia; or, The antiquities of Rome”. 1792, p.275

[2] Kausel, Cecilia. “Design & Intuition: Structures, Interiors and the Mind”. WIT Press, 2012, p.69-70

[3] Abdale, Jason. “Four Days in September: The Battle of Teutoburg”. Trafford, 2013, p.170

[4] Kelsy, Francis. “C. Iulii Caesaris Commentarii Rerum Gestarum: Caesar’s Commentaries: The Gallic War, Books I-IV, with Selections from Books V-VII and from The Civil War”. Allyn and Bacon, 1918, p. 622

24.4 External links

- http://www.roman-empire.net/articles/article-006.html
- http://museums.ncl.ac.uk/archive/arma/contents/artefax/armour/helmet/helmets.htm
- http://www.larp.com/legioxx/helmets.html
- http://www.legionsix.org/helmet.htm

Chapter 25

Illyrian type helmet

The **"Illyrian"** or **"Greco-Illyrian" type helmet** is a style of bronze helmet, which in its later variations covered the entire head and neck, and was open-faced in all of its forms.[1] Its earliest styles were first developed in ancient Greece, specifically in the Peloponnese, during the 8th and 7th centuries BC (700–640 BC).[1][2][3] Accurate representations on Corinthian vases are sufficient to indicate that the "Illyrian" type helmet was developed before 600 BC.[4] The helmet was misleadingly named as an "Illyrian" type due to a large number of early finds coming from Illyria.[1][5][note 1]

25.1 Archaeology

According to archaeological evidence, the "Illyrian" type helmet evolved from the Kegelhelm (or Kegel type) of the Archaic Period found in Argos.[1] The earliest "Illyrian" type helmets were developed in a workshop located in the northwestern Peloponnese (possibly Olympia), although the first Type II "Illyrian" helmets were created in Corinthian workshops.[2] The first Type III helmets were created in workshops situated somewhere on the Illyrian coast of the Adriatic.[6] The "Illyrian" type helmet did not obstruct the wearer's critical senses of vision though the first two varieties hampered hearing. There were four types of these helmets and all were open faced:

- Type I (c. 700–640 BC) left the neck unprotected and hampered hearing.
- Type II (c. 600 BC) offered neck protection and again hampered hearing.
- Type III (c. 550 BC) offered neck protection and allowed better hearing.
- Type IV (c. 500 BC) was similar to Type III but hearing was not impaired at all.

The Illyrian type helmet was used by the ancient Greeks,[7] Etruscans,[8] Scythians,[9] and became popular with the Illyrians who later adopted it.[7][10] A variety of the helm had also spread to Italy based on its appearance on ivory reliefs and on a silver bowl at the "Bernardini" tomb at Praeneste.[4] The helmet became obsolete in most parts of Greece in the early 5th century BC. Its use in Illyria had ended by the 4th century BC.[11]

25.2 Gallery

- Types of Ancient Greek helmets; top line, third from the left: "Illyrian type" helpet. Antikensammlung in Altes Museum, Berlin.
- "Illyrian type" helmet (left) juxtaposed to a Corinthian type helmet (right).
- "Illyrian type" helmet with funeral mask, cemetery of Sindos, Archaeological Museum of Thessaloniki (c. 520 BC).
- "Illyrian type" helmet from Budva, Montenegro (c. 4th century BC).
- Illyrian-Greek helmet from Budva, Montenegro (4th century BC).

Greek "Illyrian type" bronze helmet from Argolis (6th–5th centuries BC).

- Illyrian-Greek helmet from Kličevo, Montenegro (Upper Bronze Age).
- Greco-Illyrian helmet from Timis, Romania with horseman and six rose-petal decorations (6th–4th century BC).

25.3 References

25.3.1 Notes

[1] Naming conventions and typology of ancient helmets are of modern origin and do not reflect contemporary usage. (Connolly 1998, p. 60: “Terms such as 'Illyrian' and 'Attic' are used in archaeology for convenience to denote a particular type of helmet and do not imply its origin.”)

25.3.2 Citations

[1] Connolly 1998, p. 60.

[2] Treister 1996, pp. 59–62.

[3] Wilkes 1995, p. 108; Pearce et al. 1998, p. 242.

[4] Snodgrass 1964, p. 20.

[5] Snodgrass 1999, pp. 76, 95; Sekunda 1998, p. 53: "**Figure D2**, based on a Lakonian warrior statuette from Dodona, wears a helmet of the Illyrian type, so-named because a large number of early finds came from Illyria. However, it is now clear that it was also extremely popular in the Peloponnese, which is the most probable area of origin.”

[6] Treister 1996, p. 65: “The earliest variants of type 3 of the Illyrian helmet, dating primarily to the second half of the 6th century B.C., belong to the production of the workshops situated somewhere on the Illyrian coast of the Adriatic.”

[7] Snodgrass 1999, p. 52: “Another common form, superficially similar to the 'Insular', is the so-called 'Illyrian' helmet, in fact a purely Greek type which perhaps originated somewhere in the Peloponnese in the earlier seventh century, and only centuries later found its way to Illyria and other barbarian lands.”

[8] Richardson 1983, p. 165: "...Etruria to adopt Greek armor, the Cretan or Illyrian helmet and the hoplite shield...”

[9] Cernenko, McBride & Gorelik 1983, p. 45.

[10] Snodgrass 1999, p. 76.

[11] Wilkes 1995, p. 241.

25.3.3 Sources

- Connolly, Peter (1998). *Greece and Rome at War*. London: Greenhill Books. ISBN 1-85367-303-X.
- Cernenko, E. V.; McBride, Angus; Gorelik, M. V. (1983). *Scythians 700-300 B.C*. London: Osprey Publishing. ISBN 0-85045-478-6.
- Pearce, Mark; Tosi, Maurizio; Moravetti, Alberto; Milliken, Sarah; Vidale, Massimo (1998). *Papers from the EAA Third Annual Meeting at Ravenna 1997: Pre- and Protohistory*. Oxford: Archaeopress. ISBN 0-86054-894-5.
- Richardson, Emeline Hill (1983). *Etruscan Votive Bronzes: Geometric, Orientalizing, Archaic, Volume 1*. Mainz am Rhein: Verlag Philipp von Zabern. ISBN 3-8053-0546-X.
- Sekunda, Nick (1998). *The Spartan Army*. Oxford: Osprey Publishing. ISBN 1-85532-659-0.
- Snodgrass, Anthony M. (1999) [1967]. *Arms and Armor of the Greeks*. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press. ISBN 0-8018-6073-3.
- Snodgrass, Anthony M. (1964). *Early Greek Armour and Weapons: From the End of the Bronze Age to 600 B.C*. Edinburgh: University of Edinburgh.
- Treister, Michail Yu. (1996). *The Role of Metals in Ancient Greek History*. Leiden: E. J. Brill. ISBN 90-04-10473-9.
- Wilkes, John J. (1995). *The Illyrians*. Oxford: Blackwell Publishing Limited. ISBN 0-631-19807-5.

25.4 Further reading

- Vasić, Rastko (2010). "Reflecting on Illyrian Helmets" (PDF). *Starinar* (Institute of Archaeology, Belgrade) **60**: 37–55.

25.5 External links

- Media related to Category:Ancient helmets at Wikimedia Commons

Chapter 26

Imperial helmet

The **Imperial helmet-type** was a type of helmet worn by Roman legionaries; it replaced the Coolus type, and constituted the final evolutionary stage of the legionary helmet (*galea*).

26.1 Sub-classification

The term "Imperial helmet" was coined by H. Russell Robinson, who further sub-divided this main type into the two sub-types of "Imperial Gallic" and "Imperial Italic". They drew these names from their main manufacturers, rather than wearers - Robinson believed "Imperial Gallic" helmets (featuring a pair of distinctive embossed eyebrows on the forehead region and tending to be carefully made and elaborately decorated) were the products of Celtic craftsmen in Gaul whereas "Imperial Italic" helmets (lacking the eyebrows and somewhat more roughly made) were the product of less-skilled copycats in Italy and elsewhere in the Empire. These differences in decoration and workmanship tended to diminish as time went on; the last two Italic types classified by Robinson, the Hebron (Italic G) and Niedermörmter (Italic H) helmets, were as carefully crafted and well-decorated as any Imperial Gallic helmet.

26.2 Development

Although derived from a Celtic original, the Imperial helmet had more advanced features, such as a sloped neck guard with ribbing at the nape, projecting ear guards, brass trim, and decorative bosses.

The Roman combat experience of the Dacian wars produced further developments in helmet design, particularly the two iron bars riveted crosswise across the helmet skull (alternatively, two thick bronze strips might be riveted to the top of a bronze legionary or auxiliary helmet); it has been suggested that this form of reinforcement was added as protection against the falx.

This started as a field modification, as seen on several Imperial Gallic helmets with the crossbars hastily riveted right over the decorative eyebrows (crossbars are seen on some, though not all, of the legionary helmets on Trajan's Column), but quickly became a standard feature, found on all helmets produced from ca. AD 125 through the latter 3rd century AD.

26.3 Imperial Gallic

Imperial Gallic helmets

26.3.1 Imperial Gallic G

Robinson considered this the “typical mid-first century legionary helmet” (although the Coolus was probably more common) and it seems to have continued in use on into the early 2nd century AD. The best example was found in the Rhine River at Mainz-Weisenau and is now exhibited in Worms. Fragments of helmets of this style were found in rubbish pits at Colchester (now reassembled and displayed at the Colchester Castle Museum) and so can definitely be dated to the Boudican revolt of AD 61, though they lack the Weisenau example’s carrying handle, which probably makes the Weisenau one later. The Weisenau example’s brass rosettes resemble those found on the lorica segmentata in the Corbridge hoard.

26.3.2 Imperial Gallic H

This helmet is similar in design to the Gallic G, but features a different style of eyebrows and a more sloping neck guard. The most complete example of this type is from Lech, near Augsburg, Germany. Other datable helmets indicate a trend toward these more sloping neck guards in the last half of the 1st century, which continued through the 2nd and 3rd centuries. However, as both styles of neck guard were clearly used side by side, it was likely a matter of personal preference and/or armoury issue of what type could be worn by a particular Roman soldier.

26.3.3 Imperial Gallic I

This helmet dates to the same period as the Imperial Gallic H, and is essentially the same design, but is made in the cupric alloy "orichalcum" (brass) instead of iron. Like several other helmets, the original was found in the River Rhine

at Mainz, including one with the inscription of a soldier named L. Lucretius Celeris of Legio I Adiutrix (a legion which was stationed at Mainz from 71 to 86 AD, dating the helmet to this period). Although its crest attachment was missing, a round imprint suggests a soldered on disc, indicating it had either an Italian style "twist on" crest holder, rather than the Gallic style "slide-on" crest. Three orichalcum helmets of this style are known. All three show evidence of feather holders, which occur only rarely on iron ones, and it may be possible that in the late 1st century when iron helmets seem more common, the brass helmets and feather tubes suggest a higher rank, perhaps that of optio.

26.4 Imperial Italic

26.4.1 Imperial Italic D and E

The type D helmet was decorated with gilded motifs, yet appears to have been mass-produced. A second very similar cheek piece has been found, as well as a complete helmet (Imperial Italic E) which appears to have had the same style decoration, though most had been stripped off when it was discarded. This helmet is often depicted in modern artwork as a centurion's headpiece, but the surviving fore and aft crest attachment hooks suggest it belonged to a regular soldier. Because it is so distinctive, it is sometimes stated that it may have been a special item for a particular unit such as the Praetorian Guard. More likely, the Italic D was the product of a single workshop producing a more decorative type for soldiers who might wish to shell out a bit more for splashy headgear. Since the Italic D has integral brass cross-braces placed flat against the skull, providing a double-thickness of metal at a critical point, it is tempting to speculate that the superior performance of this type versus the Dacian falx is what led to the decision to retrofit cross bracing to all helmets in the Dacian theatre.

26.4.2 Imperial Italic G

The original example of this distinct type was found in a cave near Hebron, West Bank, Palestinian territories, and as it was probably war-loot of the Jewish Zealots of the Bar Kochba Revolt under Hadrian, can be closely dated. It is the earliest Roman helmet discovered in which the post-Dacian Wars crossbars were probably part of the original construction, as evidenced by the brass lunate decorations applied between the crossbars.

26.4.3 Imperial Italic H

The Niedermörmter helmet, classified by Robinson as Imperial Italic H, is one of the best-preserved Roman Imperial helmets to have survived from antiquity. Made of bronze and has a neck guard which is far deeper than usual. The cross bracing across the skull is actually embossed, rather than applied, and there is a rather unusual dome-shaped knob where the braces meet at the crown of the head. This helmet is typically dated to the late Antonine or Severan eras, ca. AD 180-235, but the find context of the helmet is unknown and the dating is based solely on its typology (i.e. it looks about 40–60 years down the evolutionary trail from the Italic G).

26.5 Sources

- Legio XXIV

Chapter 27

Kegelhelm

A simple Kegelhelm

The **Kegelhelm** (German: "cone helm") or **Kegel type** is a type of helmet. It is an open-faced helmet of roughly conical shape, sometimes with extensions at the sides to protect the cheeks, or a crest-holder on top. It was made of bronze, sometimes in several pieces. It was the progenitor of many Greek helmets,[1] especially the "Illyrian" type helmet. It did not outlast the eighth century BC.

27.1 Related reading

- Peter Connoly, Greece & Rome at War, ISBN 1-85367-303-X

27.2 References

[1] Peter Connoly, *Greece & Rome at War*, ISBN 1-85367-303-X, p.60: “There are several forms of Greek helmet but they all seem to have evolved from two prototypes - the Kegel and the primitive corinthian”

27.3 External links

- A Kegelhelm from the 8th century B.C.

Chapter 28

Konos (helmet)

Konos (Greek: κῶνος: *cone, spinning top*) is a conical shaped Macedonian helmet worn in combat during the Hellenistic era. Its pointed shape is similar to the Pilos helmet that is placed underneath a Konos as an interior protector. Although close in design, a Pilos helmet has a small visor around the opening and a Konos helmet is created to have a thin brim protruding from its base and closely fits around the warrior's head. Bronze ear guards that hang to the jawbone were later added for further protection, also differing from the Pilos. Spiral characteristics from the Ionic order are engraved across the front of the helmet for design. The Greek crest is fixed across the ridges of the helmet as a way to demonstrate tribe recognition. [1]

The Konos/Pilos helmet belongs to one in five standard types of Ancient Greek headgear and weaponry. A clause of military regulation from Amphipolis proclaims that the Konos is to be the helmet of Phalangites - infantry standing in close rectangular or squared formation. According to the Military Decree of Amphipolis *..those not bearing the weapons appropriate to them are to be fined: two obols for the kotthybos, the same amount for the konos, three obols for the sarissa..*[2]

28.1 References

[1] Webb, Pamela A. Hellenistic architectural sculpture: figural motifs in western Anatolia and the Aegean Islands. Vol. 1. Univ of Wisconsin Press, 1996.

[2] The Hellenistic world from Alexander to the Roman conquest By M. M. Austin Page 181 ISBN 0-521-53561-1

Chapter 29

Late Roman ridge helmet

The **Late Roman ridge helmet** was a type of combat helmet of late antiquity used by soldiers of the late Roman army. It was characterized by the possession of a bowl made up of two or four parts, united by a longitudinal ridge.

29.1 Origins

In the late 3rd century a complete break in Roman helmet design occurred. Previous Roman helmet types, based ultimately on Celtic designs, were replaced by new forms derived from helmets developed in the Sassanid Empire. A closely related form to the Roman ridge helmets is represented by a single helmet from Dura Europos which is of similar construction, but has a much higher-vaulted skull. It probably belonged to a Sassanid warrior of the 3rd century. This reinforces the evidence for a Sassanid origin of this type of helmet.[1][2] Two main forms of helmet construction were adopted by the Romans at much the same time: the ridge helmet, described here, and the spangenhelm, which was likely adopted from the Sarmatians.[3] The earliest confirmed example of a late Roman ridge helmet is the Richborough helmet, which dates to about 280 AD.[4]

29.2 Construction

Unlike earlier Roman helmets, the skull of the ridge helmet is constructed from more than one element. Roman ridge helmets can be classified into two types of skull construction: bipartite and quadripartite, also referred to as Intercisa-type and Berkasovo-type respectively.[5] The bipartite construction method is usually characterized by a two-part bowl with a central ridge running from front to back, small cheekpieces, and lack a base ring running around the rim of the bowl. Some examples of the bipartite construction also utilize metal crests, such as in the Intercisa-IV and River Maas examples. The second type of helmet is the quadripartite construction, characterized by a four-piece bowl connected by a central ridge, with two plates (connected by a reinforcing band) on each side of the ridge, and a base ring serving to unite the elements of the skull at the base of the helmet; this type is characterised by large cheekpieces. Many examples of this helmet also have a nasal, and the Budapest example also may have had attachments for a horsehair plume. It is believed that the cheekpieces were attached to skull by a helmet liner and the separate neck guard was attached by flexible leather straps, the buckles of which survive on some examples.[6][7]

There are notable exceptions to this classification method, which include the Iatrus and Worms helmets, which have large cheekpieces and a base ring respectively. Other helmets also contain minor variations.[8]

29.3 Decoration

The majority of examples excavated to date, have evidence of either decorative silvering of the iron, or are covered by costly silver or silver-gilt sheathing; a job entrusted to men called *barbaricarii*[9] The Berkasovo-I example is decorated with many glass gems on the bowl, cheekpieces, and neckguard.[10] For a number of extant helmets all that remains is the decorative silver or gold sheathing, the iron having corroded away entirely.[11] A single helmet found at Intercisa in Hungary, where a hoard of 15-20 helmets was unearthed, has a tall, integral, iron crest attached to the

Roman ridge helmet (Berkasovo I), early 4th century AD. Made of iron and sheathed in silver-gilt, it is decorated with glass gems. From the "Berkasovo treasure", Muzej Vojvodine, Novi Sad (Serbia).

ridge. A similar helmet found at Augst has three slots in its ridge for the attachment of a separate crest. There have also been finds of unattached crest pieces, or ones attached to only the ridge of the helmet.[12]

29.4 Usage

Earlier Roman cavalry helmet types usually have cheek guards that have a section covering the ears, whereas infantry helmets do not. Many authors have extrapolated from this that the Intercisa-type helmets were infantry helmets, while the Berkasovo-type helmets were cavalry examples, based mostly on the existence of ear-holes in the Intercisa-type. One Berkasovo-type helmet, the Deurne helmet, has an inscription to a cavalry unit of the *equites stablesiani*, tending to support this hypothesis.[13][14] However, both types of helmet are depicted being worn by infantry and cavalry in Roman art, and some finds of these helmets, such as the Burgh Castle example, show they were used interchangeably.

Augsburg-Pfersee Ridge Helmet (Intercisa-type), mid-4th century. This example shows the silver and/or gold sheathing found on all Roman ridge helmets.

Late Roman ridge helmets are depicted for the first time on coins of Constantine the Great and are believed to have come into use between 270 and 300 AD.[13][15] The last archaeological examples date to the early 5th century, and include the River Maas Helmet, dated to 409-411 by coins of Constantine III, and the Concești example, found in a Hunnic burial. The ridge helmet remained in artistic usage well into the 7th century and possibly later. Helmets with a rounded shape are also illustrated in Byzantine manuscripts of the 10-12th centuries, and may have been derived from the earlier Roman 'ridge helmet'.[16]

Early copies of ridge helmets include the Fernpass example, dated to the 4th century and found in Austria, and believed to belong to a Germanic Warrior who had his own helmet modified to look like a ridge helmet. Many helmets of the Germanic states of Western and Northern Europe in the Early Middle Ages are derivations of the Roman ridge helmet, these include the Anglo-Saxon Coppergate helmet.[17]

29.5 References

[1] James, entire article

[2] Southern and Dixon, pp. 94-95

[3] Bishop and Coulston, p. 67

Late Roman ridge helmet (Berkasovo-type), found at Deurne, Netherlands. It is covered in silver-gilt sheathing and is inscribed to a cavalryman of the equites stablesiani.

[4] Lyne, Malcolm (1994): Late Roman helmet fragments from Richborough, in: Journal of Roman Military Equipment Studies 5, pp. 97-105.

[5] Sometimes recorded as Berkasova in the literature, however, Berkasovo is the correct transliteration of the name of the Serbian village where the helmets were excavated.

[6] Southern and Dixon, pp. 92-94

[7] James, p. 112

[8] Southern and Dixon, pp. 92-95

[9] Codex Theodosianus 10.22.I (11 March, 374)

[10] Klumbach, Hans (1973) Spatromische Gardehelme p. 19

[11] Bishop and Coulston, pp. 66-67

[12] Southern and Dixon, p. 93

[13] Bishop and Coulston, p. 66

[14] Southern and Dixon, p. 95

[15] James, pp. 114-115

[16] Dawson, pp. 20–21.

[17] James, p. 134

29.6 Bibliography

- Bishop, M. C. and Coulston, J. C. (1989) *Roman Military Equipment*, Shire Publications, Aylesbury.
- Dawson, T. (2007). *Byzantine Infantryman. Eastern Roman Empire c.900–1204*. Osprey. ISBN 978-1-84603-105-2.
- James, S. (1986) *Evidence from Dura Europos for the Origins of Late Roman Helmets*. In: Syria, T. 63, Fasc. 1/2 (1986), pp. 107–134. Published by: *Institut Francais du Proche-Orient*.
- Southern, P. and Dixon, K. (1996) *The Late Roman Army*, Batsford. ISBN 0-300-06843-3

29.7 Further reading

- Mahand Vogt: *Spangenhelme. Baldenheim und verwandte Typen.* Monographien des Römisch-Germanischen Zentralmuseums 39. Römisch-Germanisches Zentralmuseum, Schnell & Steiner, Regensburg 2007. ISBN 978-3-7954-2006-2.
- Simon MacDowall and Christa Hook: *Late Roman Cavalryman AD 236-565.* ISBN 1-85532-567-5
- Peter Wilcox und Angus McBride: *Rome's Enemies 3: Parthians and Sassanid Persians.* ISBN 0-85045-688-6
- John Warry: *Warfare in the Classical World: An Illustrated Encyclopedia of Weapons, Warriors, and Warfare in the Ancient Civilisations of Greece and Rome.* ISBN 0-8061-2794-5

29.8 External links

Chapter 30

Montefortino helmet

A Roman Montefortino helmet (Carnuntum).

The **Montefortino helmet** was a type of Celtic, and later Roman, military helmet used from around 300 BC through the 1st century AD with continuing modifications. This helmet type is named after the region of Montefortino in Italy, where a Montefortino helmet was first uncovered in a Celtic burial.

30.1 Description

Montefortino helmets are generally characterized by a conical or round shape with a raised central knob, and a protruding neck guard as well as cheek plates to protect the sides of the head. Other common features include a “rope"-type pattern around the edge, and “pinecone"-type patterning on the crest knob. Note that the classifications are those used by archaeologists, rather than Celts or Romans, who, if they did distinguish among these types, have left no known record of the terms they used.

In the Roman Republic, the Montefortino helmet was the first stage in the development of the galea, derived from Celtic helmet designs. Similar types are to be found in Spain, Gaul, and into northern Italy. Surviving examples are generally found missing their cheek pieces (probably because they were made of a perishable material which has not survived, e.g., leather[1]) though a pair of holes on each side of the helmet from which these plates would have hung tend to be clearly identifiable, and examples which do include cheek pieces show clearly how these holes were used. Roman versions sometimes contain inscriptions of the name of the soldier who wore the helmet. Earlier helmets in the type are generally more decorated since, as the Roman army moved into the huge period of growth during the Marian reforms at the end of the 2nd century BC, cheap, undecorated but effective helmets needed to be mass-produced for the mainly poor legionaries.

30.2 Sub-types

- **Canosa**
- **Rieti**: This type was the first to evince inscriptions identifying them clearly as Roman.
- **Buggenum**, circa 1st Century BC: These simple and practical helmets clearly belong to the Montefortino type and are thought to have been used during the time of Caesar contemporaneously with the Mannheim sub-type of Coolus helmet. The neck guards of this type are wider, and the crest knobs tend to be hollow in contrast to the solid ones of the earlier types.
- **Hagenau**, circa 1st Century AD: These hybrid helmets still show the typical shape of Montefortino helmets, but the neck guard becomes substantially wider, and some incorporate a reinforcing strap across the brow, as well as a carrying hook or handle at the back.

30.3 External links

- Roman Coins
- Legio II Augusta
- Legio XXIV

30.4 Notes

[1] http://www.romancoins.info/MilitaryEquipment-Helmet-montefortino.html#Montefortino

30.5 References

- Roman Numismatic Gallery: Roman Coins, Sculpture, Military Equipment (http://www.romancoins.info/Content.html)

Chapter 31

Negau helmet

Negau helmet refers to one of 26 bronze helmets (23 of which are preserved) dating to ca. 450 BC–350 BC, found in 1811 in a cache in Ženjak, near Negau, Duchy of Styria (now Negova, Slovenia). The helmets are of typical Etruscan 'vetulonic' shape, sometimes described as of the **Negau type**. They were buried in ca. 50 BC, shortly before the Roman invasion of the area. Helmets of the Negau type were typically worn by priests at the time of deposition of these helmets, so they seem to have been left at the Ženjak site for ceremonial reasons. The village of Ženjak was of great interest to German archaeologists during the Nazi period and was briefly renamed Harigast during World War II. The site has never been excavated properly.

31.1 Inscriptions

On one of the helmets ("Negau B"), there is an inscription in a northern Etruscan alphabet. Note that the inscription need not date to 400 BC, but was possibly added by a later owner in ca. 2nd century BC or later. It is read as:

> 𐌀𐌀𐌀𐌀𐌀𐌀𐌀𐌀𐌀𐌀𐌀𐌀𐌀𐌀𐌀///𐌀𐌀
> *harikastiteiva**ip*,

Many interpretations of the inscription have been proffered in the past, but the most recent interpretation is by T.L. Markey (2001), who reads the inscription as 'Harigast the priest' (from **teiwaz* "god"), as another inscribed helmet also found at the site bears several names (mostly Celtic) followed by religious titles.

In any case, the Germanic name *Harigast* is almost universally read. Formerly, some scholars have seen the inscription as an early incarnation of the runic alphabet, but it is now accepted that the script is North Etruscan proper, and precedes the formation of the Runic alphabet. *Harigast* constitutes an attestation of the Germanic sound shift, probably the earliest preserved, preceding Tacitus perhaps by some two centuries.

Must (1957) reads *Hariχas Titieva* as a Raetic personal name, the first element from the Indo-European (Venetic rather than Germanic), the second from the Etruscan.

The four discrete inscriptions on the helmet usually called "Negau A" are read by Markey as: *Dubni banuabi* 'of Dubnos the pig-slayer'; *sirago turbi* 'astral priest of the troop'; *Iars'e esvii* 'Iarsus the divine'; and *Kerup*, probably an abbreviation for a Celtic name like Cerubogios.

31.2 See also

- Meldorf fibula

31.3 References

- Markey, Tom (2001). "A Tale of Two Helmets: The Negau A and B Inscriptions". *Journal of Indo-European Studies* **29** (1/2): 69–172.

*A **Negau helmet** excavated at Hallstatt Archaeological Site in Vače, near Vače, Slovenia. Kept by Museum of Prehistory and Early History (Berlin)*

- Must, Gustav (1957). "The Problem of the Inscription on Helmet B of Negau". *Harvard Studies in Classical Philology* **62**: 51–59.

31.4 External links

- "The Negau helmet". TITUS (project). 2001.

Chapter 32

Phrygian helmet

The **Phrygian helmet**, also known as the **Thracian helmet**,[1] was a type of helmet that originated in Classical Greece and was widely used[2] in Thrace, Dacia, Magna Graecia and the Hellenistic world until well into the Roman Empire.

32.1 Characteristics

The names given to this type of helmet are derived from its shape, in particular the high and forward inclined apex, in which it resembles the caps (usually of leather) habitually worn by Phrygian and Thracian peoples. Like other types of Greek helmet, the vast majority of Phrygian helmets were made of bronze. The skull of the helmet was usually raised from a single sheet of bronze, though the forward-pointing apex was sometimes made separately and riveted to the skull. The skull was often drawn out into a peak at the front, this shaded the wearer's eyes and offered protection to the upper part of the face from downward blows. The face was further protected by large cheekpieces, made separately from the skullpiece. Sometimes these cheekpieces were so large that they met in the centre leaving a gap for the nose and eyes. When constructed in this manner they would have embossed and engraved decoration to mimic a beard and moustache.[3]

32.2 Use

The Phrygian helmet was worn by Macedonian cavalry in King Philip's day but his son Alexander is said to have preferred the open-faced Boeotian helmet for his cavalry, as recommended by Xenophon.[4] The royal burial in the Vergina Tomb contained a helmet which was a variation on the Phrygian type, exceptionally made of iron, this would support its use by cavalry. The Phrygian helmet is prominently worn in representations of the infantry of Alexander the Great's army, such on the contemporary Alexander sarcophagus[5] The Phrygian helmet was in prominent use at the end of the Classical Era and into the Hellenistic period, replacing the earlier 'Corinthian' type from the 5th century BC.[note 1]

32.3 Notes

[1] The naming conventions and typology of ancient helmets are largely of modern origin and do not reflect contemporary usage; Connolly, P. (1981) Greece and Rome at War. Macdonald Phoebus, London. ISBN 1-85367-303-X, p. 60: "Terms such as 'Illyrian' and 'Attic' are used in archaeology for convenience to denote a particular type of helmet and do not imply its origin."

32.4 References

[1] Rome's Enemies (1): Germanics and Dacians (Men at Arms Series, 129) by Peter Wilcox and Gerry Embleton,1982,page 20,"... people, as were the Phrygians and those Thracians living north ... the solid crest of a 'Phrygian'-type helmet as a

running pattern, as shown on the pedestal reliefs; ..."

[2] The Army of Alexander the Great (Men at Arms Series, 148) by Nicholas Sekunda and Angus McBride,1992,page 6,"... Philip gave them heavy armour-cuirasses and helmets of the `Phrygian' type-and he further developed the new tactical formations of Jason of Pherai ..."

[3] Connelly, pp 70-71

[4] Anderson, J.K, (1961) *Ancient Greek Horsemanship*, Berkeley and Los Angeles. pp. 147- 148.

[5] Heckel, W. and Jones, R. (2006) *Macedonian Warrior Alexander's elite infantryman*, Osprey, p 61, ISBN 978-1-84176-950-9,2006

32.5 Bibliography

- Anderson, J.K, (1961) *Ancient Greek Horsemanship*, Berkeley and Los Angeles.
- Connolly, P. (1981) *Greece and Rome at War.* Macdonald Phoebus, London. ISBN 1-85367-303-X

Phrygian helmet with a shallow peak and relatively small cheekpieces.

Phrygian or Thracian helmet. Unusually, it has a nasal in place of the typical peak.

Ancient depiction of a Macedonian infantryman (right). He is equipped with a typical Phrygian/Thracian helmet with a peak. Alexander Sarcophagus.

Chapter 33

Shmarjet

The **Shmarjet helmet** was a helmet of Illyrian[1] origin worn by the historical Illyrians and the Veneti. It was favored especially by the Iapodes.[2] It had two varieties, one with a wicker base and one with chain mail sewn together. The discs and studs were optional.

33.1 References

[1] Early Roman Armies by Nick Sekunda, Simon Northwood, ISBN 1-85532-513-6, 1995, page 35

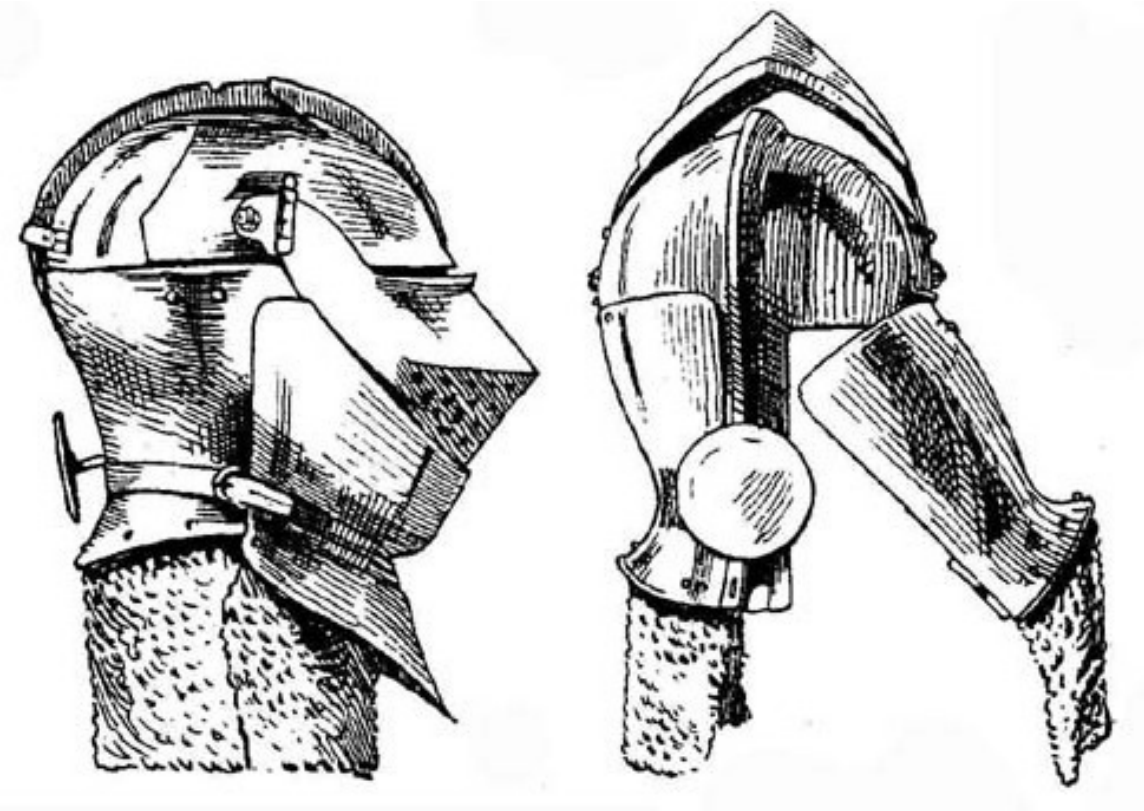
[2] Wilkes, J. J. The Illyrians, 1992, ISBN 0-631-19807-5, page 234,"... Lika, 25 cm long c) Bronze temple-band from Gorica, Slovenia d) Japodian metal headgear from Kompolje, Lika ..."

33.2 See also

- Illyrians
- Ancient Warfare

Chapter 34

Armet



Construction of a classic armet (c. 1490), it is fitted with a wrapper and aventail, and the method of opening the helmet is shown

The **Armet** is a type of helmet which was developed in the 15th century. It was extensively used in Italy, France, England, the Low Countries, Spain and Hungary. It was distinguished by being the first helmet of its era to completely enclose the head while being compact and light enough to move with the wearer. Its use was essentially restricted to the fully armoured man-at-arms.

34.1 Appearance and origins

As the armet was fully enclosing, and narrowed to follow the contours of the neck and throat, it had to have a mechanical means of opening and closing to enable it to be worn. The typical armet consisted of four pieces: the skull, the two large hinged cheek-pieces which locked at the front over the chin, and a visor which had a double pivot, one either side of the skull. The cheek-pieces opened laterally; when closed they overlapped at the chin, fastening by means of a spring-pin which engaged in a corresponding hole, or by a swivel-hook and pierced staple. A multi-part

Armet of an English Greenwich armour c. 1585. The method of locking the cheek-pieces can be seen at the chin: a swivel-hook engages a pierced staple. The lower edge of the helmet has a gutter-like rim which engages with a flange running around the upper edge of the gorget.

reinforcement for the bottom half of the face, known as a *wrapper*, was sometimes added; its straps were protected by a metal disc at the base of the skull piece called a *rondel*. The visor attached to each pivot via hinges with removable pins, as in the later examples of the bascinet. This method remained in use until c. 1520, after which the hinge disappeared and the visor had a solid connection to its pivot. The earlier armet often had a small aventail, a piece of mail attached to the bottom edge of each cheek-piece.[1]

The earliest surviving armet dates to 1420 and was made in Milan.[2] An Italian origin for this type of helmet therefore

seems to be indicated. The innovation of a reduced skull and large hinged cheek pieces was such a radical departure from previous forms of helmet that it is highly probable that the armet resulted from the invention of a single armourer or soldier and not as the result of evolution from earlier forms.[3]

34.2 Use and variations

The armet reached the height of its popularity during the late 15th and early 16th centuries when western European full plate armour had been perfected. Movable face and cheek pieces allowed the wearer to close the helmet, thus fully protecting the head from blows. The term armet was often applied in contemporary usage to any fully enclosing helmet, however, modern scholarship draws a distinction between the armet and the outwardly similar close helm on the basis of their construction, especially their means of opening to allow them to be worn. While an armet had two large cheekpieces hinged at the skull and opened laterally, a close helm instead had a kind of movable bevor which was attached to the same pivot points as its visor and opened vertically.[4]

The classic armet had a narrow extension to the back of the skull reaching down to the nape if the neck, and the cheekpieces were hinged, horizontally, directly from the main part of the skull. From about 1515 the Germans produced a variant armet where the downward extension of the skull was made much wider, reaching as far forward as the ears. The cheekpieces on this type of helmet hinged vertically on the edges of this wider neck element.[5] The high quality English Greenwich armours often included this type of armet from c. 1525. Greenwich-made armets adopted the elegant two-piece visor found on contemporary close helmets; armets of this form were manufactured until as late as 1615. The lower edge of such helmets often closed over a flange in the upper edge of a gorget-piece. The helmet could then rotate without allowing a gap in the armour that a weapon point could enter.[6]

The armet is found in many contemporary pieces of artwork, such as Paolo Uccello's "Battle of San Romano," and is almost always shown as part of a Milanese armor. These depictions show armets worn with tall and elaborate crests, largely of feathered plumes; however, no surviving armets have similar crests and very few show obvious provision for the attachment of such crests.[7]

The armet was most popular in Italy, however, in England and Western Europe it was widely used by men-at-arms alongside the sallet, whilst in Germany the latter helmet was much more common. It is believed that the close helm resulted from a combination of various elements derived from each of the preceding helmet types.

34.3 References

[1] Oakeshott, pp. 118-121

[2] Oakeshott, p. 118

[3] Oakeshott, p. 118

[4] Oakeshott p. 121

[5] Oakeshott p. 123

[6] Gravett, pp. 20, 62

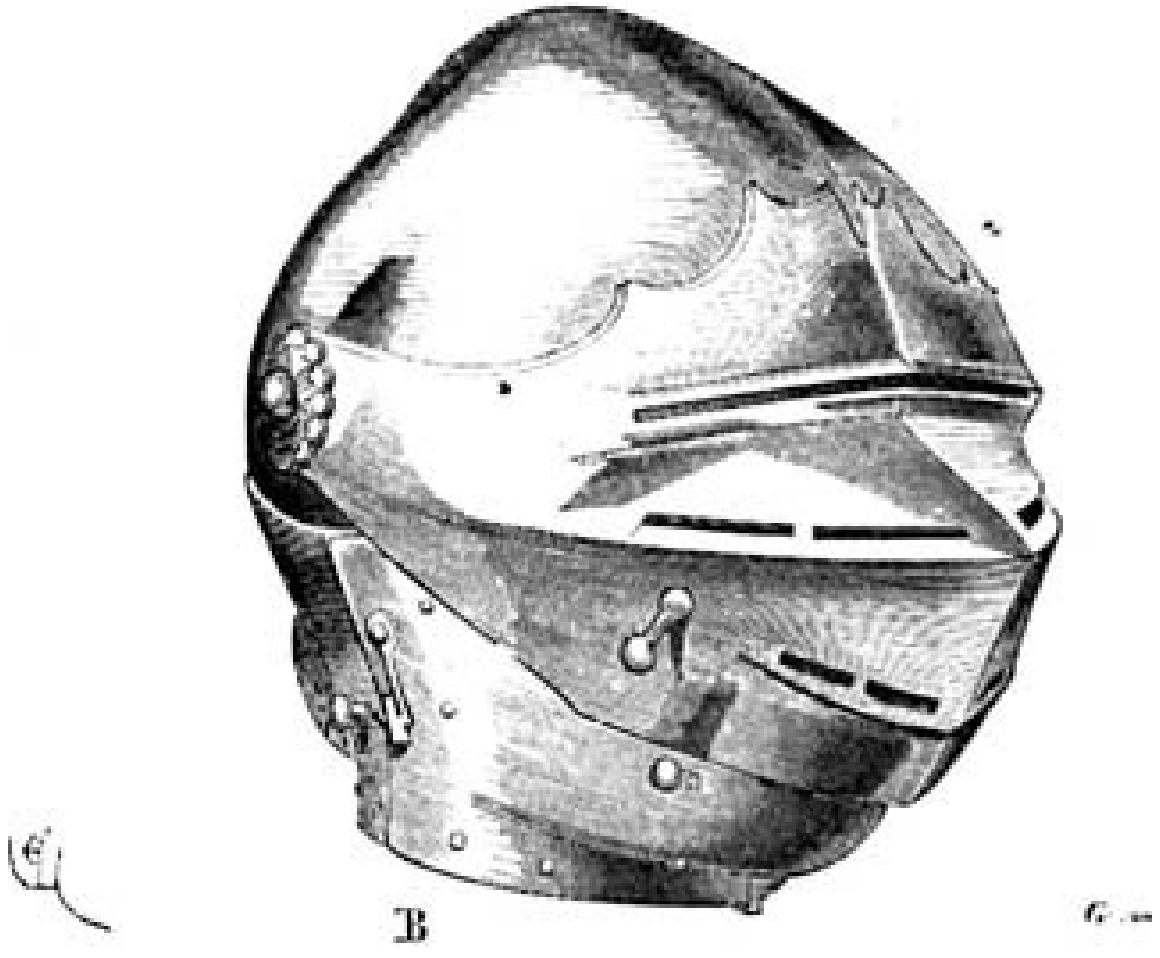
[7] Oakeshott, pp. 119-120

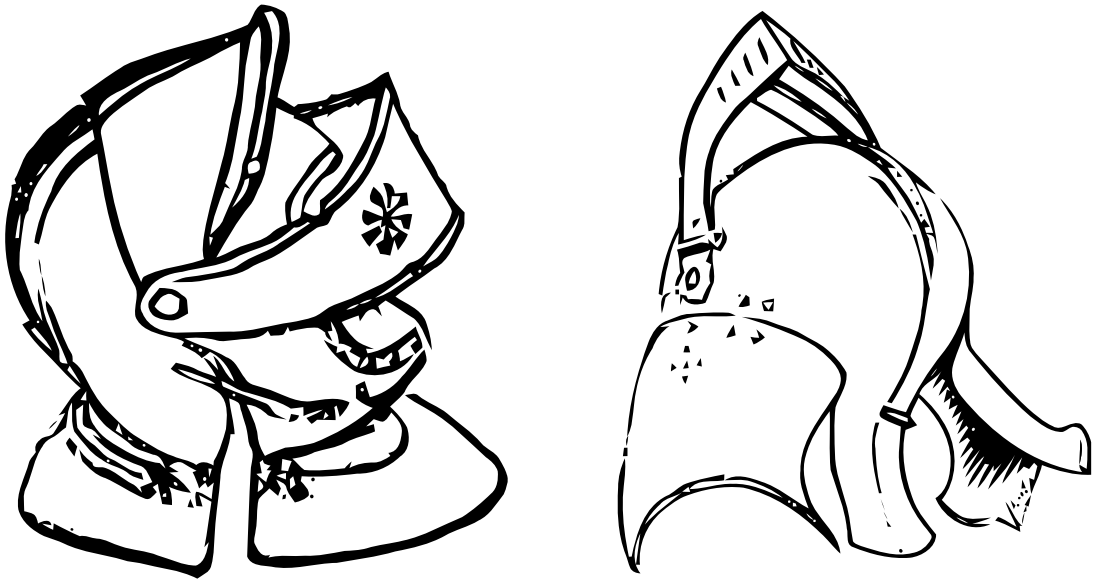
34.4 Bibliography

- Gravett, Christopher (2006) *Tudor Kight*. Osprey Publishing, London.
- Oakeshott, Ewart (1980) *European Weapons and Armour. From Renaissance to the Industrial Revolution*. Lutterworth Press ISBN 0-85115-789-0.

Жуков К.А. Armet a rondelle. Функциональное назначение одной детали шлемов позднего средневековья. http://mreen.org/OZRclub/armet-a-rondelle-funkcionalnoe-naznachenie-odnoy-detali-shlemov-pozdnego-srednevekovya_2.html


C
A


B



Comparison of close helm and armet in open position. Note the close helm uses a single pivot point for the double visor and bevor, while the armet has hinged cheek plates that lock in place.

Chapter 35

Aventail

This article is about the piece of medieval armor. For the network technology company, see Aventail Corporation.

An **aventail** or **camail** is a flexible curtain of mail attached to the skull of a helmet that extends to cover the throat,

Historic depiction of a bascinet fitting on the tomb of Edward of Woodstock (1376)

neck and shoulders. Part or all of the face, with spaces to allow vision, could also be covered. The earliest camails were riveted directly to the edge of the helmet, however, beginning in the 1320s in Western Europe a detachable version replaced this type.[1] The detachable aventail was attached to a leather band, which was in turn attached to the lower border of the helmet by a series of staples called vervelles. Holes in the leather band were passed over the vervelles, and a waxed cord was passed through the holes in the vervelles to secure it.[2] Aventails were most commonly seen on bascinets in the 14th century and served as a replacement for a complete mail hood (coif). Some aventails were decorated with edging in brass or bronze links (sometimes gilded), or with a zig-zag lower edge (vandyked). By the late 15th century, the aventail had replaced the mail coif completely.

35.1 References

[1] Gravett 2008, p. 116

[2] Bradbury, p. 261

35.2 Bibliography

- Bradbury, Jim (2004). “14 Medieval Armour (A-Z of terms: Aventail ~ Bascinet)". *The Routledge Companion to Medieval Warfare*. Routlege. pp. 261–262.
- Gravett, Christopher (2008) *Knight: Noble Warrior of England 1200–1600.* Osprey Publishing.

14th century bascinet fitted with an aventail.

Chapter 36

Barbute

A **barbute** (termed a *barbuta* in Italian) is a visorless war helmet of 15th-century Italian design, often with distinctive "T" shaped or "Y" shaped opening for the eyes and mouth. The name is first recorded in an inventory made for the Gonzaga family of Mantua in 1407. It can be considered as a specialised form of the sallet. The barbute resembles classical Greek helmets (most strikingly the Corinthian) and may have been influenced by a renewed interest in ancient artifacts which was common in this period.[1]

36.1 Characteristics

The defining characteristic of the barbute is the fact that the shape of the helmet extends all the way down to cover both sides of the face. Regardless of the type of opening, T-shaped, Y-shaped or arch-shaped, this characteristic was always present. This design of helmet enabled the user to wear a gorget.[2] In place of a plate gorget, the barbute was often worn with a stiffened mail collar, termed a "standard," which protected the throat and neck. In some examples, there is a central, narrow protrusion extending down from the top of the opening, designed to protect the wearer's nose. Sometimes, like Italian sallets, barbutes were covered by a rich decorative fabric, typically heavy velvet.

Unlike the sallet, the barbute seems to have enjoyed little popularity outside Italy.

The main differences between the barbute and the Greek hoplite's helm to which it is often compared is the difference in material and the lack of a prominent decorative crest. Ancient Greeks used bronze, while most barbutes were constructed of steel.

Barbutes were made most commonly from a single sheet of steel using the metal smithing process of raising until the piece assumed the desired shape.[3] Many barbutes feature a low ridged crest forged into the top of the helmet's skull which served to strengthen the helmet without adding a significant amount of weight.

36.2 In Popular Culture

- In The Lord of the Rings film franchise, three legions give their soldiers barbutes: The Men of Gondor wear conical-topped steel ones featuring seagull wings subtly embossed out from the inside. The Elven troops of the Last Alliance (the High Elves of Middle-earth) wear gold barbutes with Corinthian-looking crests on top. Lastly, the Easterlings (Men of Rhun) wear three-horned dome helmets made of bronze with faceplates that resemble the faceplate of a barbute helmet with chin protection.

- The Star Wars characters, Boba Fett and Jango Fett, also wear helmets with a T-shaped visor that vaguely resembles a barbute, as do most other Mandalorians and Phase I Clonetroopers within the franchise.

- In Marvel Comic's X-Men, villain Magneto wears a specialized barbute to thwart psychic abilities that might be used against him.

Original 15th century barbute of the T-shaped design from the Philadelphia Museum of Art's Kretzschmar von Kienbusch Collection of arms and armour

36.3 References

[1] Oakeshott, pp. 109-110

[2] Leonello Boccia, *Armi Italiane*, Zanichelli, Bologna, 1966.

[3] *Quattro Secoli di Armi Bianche*, I Documentari, Novara, 1973.

A modern reconstruction based on the Y-shaped barbute design

36.4 Bibliography

- Oakeshott, Ewart (1980) *European Weapons and Armour: From the Renaissance to the Industrial Revolution.* Lutterworth Press.

Chapter 37

Bascinet

"Basinet" redirects here. For the infant's bed, see bassinet.

The **bascinet** — also **bassinet**, **basinet**, or **bazineto** — was a Medieval European open-faced military helmet. It evolved from a type of iron or steel skullcap, but had a more pointed apex to the skull, and it extended downwards at the rear and sides to afford protection for the neck. A mail curtain ("camail" or aventail) was usually attached to the lower edge of the helmet to protect the throat, neck and shoulders. A visor (face guard) was often employed from ca. 1330 to protect the exposed face. Early in the fifteenth century, the camail began to be replaced by a plate metal gorget, giving rise to the so-called "great bascinet".

37.1 Development

The first recorded reference to a bascinet, or *bazineto*, was in the Italian city of Padua in 1281, when it is described as being worn by infantry.[1]

It is believed that the bascinet evolved from a simple iron skullcap,[2] known as the cervelliere, which was worn with a mail coif, as either the sole form of head protection or beneath a great helm. The bascinet is differentiated from the cervelliere by having a higher, pointed skull.[2] By about 1330 the bascinet had been extended lower down the sides and back of the head. Within the next 20 years it had extended to the base of the neck and covered the cheeks.[3] The bascinet appeared quite suddenly in the later 13th century and some authorities see it as being influenced by Byzantine or Middle-Eastern Muslim helmets.[1] The bascinet, without a visor, continued to be worn underneath larger "great helms" (also termed *heaumes*).[4][5][6]

37.1.1 Camails or aventails

Unlike the cervelliere, which was worn in conjunction with, often underneath, a complete hood of mail called the coif,[7] early bascinets were typically worn with a neck and throat defence of mail that was attached to the lower edge of the helmet itself; this mail 'curtain' was called a camail or aventail. The earliest camails were riveted directly to the edge of the helmet, however, beginning in the 1320s a detachable version replaced this type.[8] The detachable aventail was attached to a leather band, which was in turn attached to the lower border of the bascinet by a series of staples called vervelles. Holes in the leather band were passed over the vervelles, and a waxed cord was passed through the holes in the vervelles to secure it.[9]

37.1.2 Protection for the face

Bretache

The illustration to the right shows a bascinet with a type of detachable nasal (nose protector) called the bretache or *bretèche* made of sheet metal.[10] The bretache was attached to the aventail at the chin, and it fastened to a hook or clamp on the brow of the helmet.[10] According to Boeheim, this type of defence was prevalent in Germany, appearing around 1330 and fading from use around 1370.[10][note 1] The bretache was also used in Italy; one of the first representations of it is on the equestrian statue of Cangrande I della Scala, who died in 1329. It is also shown

on the tomb of Bernardino dei Barbanzoni in the Museo Lapidario Estense in Modena, executed ca. 1345–50. An advantage of the bretache was that it could be worn under a great helm, but afforded some facial protection when the great helm was taken off. Use of the bretache preceded and overlapped with that of a new type of visor used with the bascinet, the “klappvisor” or "*klappvisier*".[11]

Visored bascinets

The open-faced bascinet, even with the mail aventail, still left the exposed face vulnerable.[13] However, from about 1330, the bascinet was often worn with a 'face guard' or movable visor.[8]

The “klappvisor” or "*klappvisier*" was a type of visor employed on bascinets from around 1330-1340; this type of visor was hinged at a single point in the centre of the brow of the helmet skull. It was particularly favoured in Germany, but was also used in northern Italy where it is shown in a Crucifixion painted in the chapter hall of Santa Maria Novella in Florence, c.1367. Its use in Italy seems to have ceased around 1380, but continued in Germany into the 15th century.[14] The klappvisor has been characterised as being intermediate between the bretache nasal and the side pivoting visor.[15] It should be noted that not all sources agree on the nature of the *klappvisier*; De Vries and Smith class all smaller visors, those that only cover the area of the face left exposed by the aventail, as *klappvisiers*, regardless of the construction of their hinge mechanism. However, they agree that *klappvisiers*, by their alternate definition of 'being of small size', preceded the larger forms of visor, which exclusively employed the double pivot, found in the latter part of the 14th century.[16]

The side-pivot mount, which used two pivots - one on each side of the helmet, is shown in funerary monuments and other pictorial or sculptural sources of the 1340s. One of the early depictions of a doubly pivoted visor on a bascinet is the funerary monument of Sir Hugh Hastings (d. 1347) in St. Mary’s Church, Elsing, Norfolk, England.[3] The pivots were connected to the visor by means of hinges to compensate for any lack of parallelism between the pivots. The hinges usually had a removable pin holding them together, this allowed the visor to be completely detached from the helmet, if desired.[8] The side-pivot system was commonly seen in Italian armours.[16]

Whether of the klappvisor or double pivot type, the visors of the first half of the 14th century tended to be of a relatively flat profile with little projection from the face.[8] They had eye-slits surrounded by a flange to help deflect weapon points. From around 1380 the visor, by this time considerably larger than earlier forms, was drawn out into a conical point like a muzzle or a beak, and was given the names “hounskull” (from the German *hundsgugel* - “hound’s hood”) or “pig faced”[2] (in modern parlance).[8] From about 1410 the visor became progressively more rounded, and by 1435 it gave an 'ape-like' profile to the helmet; by 1450 it formed a sector in the, by then, almost globular bascinet.[17]

37.2 Later evolution of the helmet

Between c. 1390 and 1410 the bascinet had an exaggeratedly tall skull with an acutely pointed profile — sometimes so severe as to have a near-vertical back. Ten years later both the skull of the helmet and the hinged visor started to become less angular and more rounded. Almost globular forms became common by c. 1450. As part of the same process the helmet became more close-fitting, and narrowed to follow the contours of the neck.[18]

37.2.1 Bevors and gorgets

Around 1350, during the reign of John II, French bascinets began to be fitted with a hinged chin- or jaw-piece (bevor (sense 2), French: *bavière*), upon which the visor would be able to rest.[19] The visor and bevor that closed flush with each other thus provided better protection against incoming sword blows. This type of defence augmented the camail rather than replaced it.[19]

The bascinet fitted with a camail was relatively heavy and most of the weight was supported directly by the head. Plate gorgets were introduced from c. 1400-1410, which replaced the camail and removed the weight of the throat and neck defences from the head to the shoulders. At the same time a plate covering the cheeks and lower face was introduced also called the *bavière* (contemporary usage was not precise). This *bavière* was directly attached by rivets to the skull of the bascinet. The combined skull and *bavière* could rotate within the upper part of the gorget, which overlapped them. A degree of freedom of movement was retained, but was probably less than had been the case with the mail camail.[20]

37.2.2 Great bascinet

In the view of Oakeshott the replacement of the camail by a plate gorget gave rise to the form of helmet known as the “great bascinet”.[17] However, many other scholars consider that the term should be reserved for bascinets where the skull, and baviere - if present, was fixed to the gorget, rendering the whole helmet immobile.[21][22]

Early gorgets were wide, copying the shape of the earlier aventail, however, with the narrowing of the neck opening the gorget plates had to be hinged to allow the helmet to be put on. Early great bascinets had the skull of the helmet riveted to the rear gorget plate, however, some later great bascinets had the skull forged in a single piece with the rear gorget plate. The gorget was often strapped to both the breast and backplate of the cuirass.[17] In this late form the head was relieved of the entire weight of the helmet, which rested on the shoulders; however, the helmet was rendered totally immobile and the head of the wearer had only limited abilities to move inside it. Though very strongly constructed, this type of helmet imposed limitations on the wearer’s vision and agility.[21]

37.3 Historic use

37.3.1 Use with the great helm

Bascinets, other than great bascinets, could be worn beneath a great helm. However, only those without face protection, or those with the close fitting bretache, could be worn in this manner. The great helm afforded a high degree of protection, but at the cost of very restricted vision and agility. The lighter types of bascinet gave less protection but allowed greater freedom of movement and better vision. The practicality of a man-at-arms being able to take off a great helm during a battle, if he wanted to continue fighting wearing just a bascinet, is unclear. By the mid 14th century the great helm was probably largely relegated to tournament use.[23] However, Henry V of England is reputed to have worn a great helm over a bascinet at the Battle of Agincourt in 1415. He was recorded as receiving a blow to the head during the battle, which damaged his helmet; the double protection afforded by wearing two helmets may have saved his life.[24]

37.3.2 Later use

By the middle of the 14th century, most knights had discarded the great helm altogether in favor of a fully visored bascinet. The bascinet, both with and without a visor, was the most common helmet worn in Europe during most of the 14th century and the first half of the 15th century, including during the Hundred Years’ War. Contemporary illustrations show a majority of knights and men-at-arms wearing one of a few variants of the bascinet helmet. Indeed so ubiquitous was the use of the helmet that “bascinet” became an alternative term for a man-at-arms.[24] Though primarily associated with use by the 'knightly' classes and other men-at-arms some infantry also made use of the lighter versions of this helmet. Regions where rich citizens were fielded as infantry, such as Italy, and other lands producing specialised professional infantry such as the English and Welsh longbowman probably saw the greatest use of bascinets by infantrymen.[25][26]

The basic design of the earlier, conical version of the helmet was intended to direct blows from weapons downward and away from the skull and face of the wearer. Later versions of the bascinet, especially the great bascinet, were designed to maximise coverage and therefore protection. In achieving this they sacrificed the mobility and comfort of the wearer; thus, ironically, returning to the situation that the wearers of the cumbersome great helm experienced and that the early bascinets were designed to overcome.[27] It is thought that poorer men-at-arms continued to employ lighter bascinets with mail camails long after the richest had adopted plate gorgets.[28]

37.3.3 Decline in use

Soon after 1450 the “great bascinet” was rapidly discarded for field use, being replaced by the armet and sallet, which were lighter helmets allowing greater freedom of movement for the wearer. However, a version of the great bascinet, usually with a cage-like visor, remained in use for foot combat in tournaments into the 16th century.[17]

37.4 Notes

[1] The illustration, taken from Viollet-le-Duc, occurs under the heading of “Barbute” (Viollet-le-Duc 1874, volume 5, p.187) and not “Bacinet”. Viollet-le-Duc refers to the nose piece merely as a "*nasal*. However, Nicolle defines the barbute, or *barbuta*, as a “deep form of **bascinet** protecting much of the face” Nicolle (1996), p. 62.

37.5 References

[1] Nicolle (1999-journal), p. 583.

[2] Peterson 1968 (*Encyclopaedia Britannica*, “Helmet”)

[3] Gravett (2008), p. 115

[4] Wise 1975, p. 15

[5] Chisholm, Hugh, ed. (1911). "Basinet". *Encyclopædia Britannica* **3** (11th ed.). Cambridge University Press. p. 480.

[6] Nicolle (1996), pp.50-51.

[7] Nicolle (1996) p. 59.

[8] Gravett (2008), p. 116

[9] Bradbury, p. 261

[10] Boeheim 1890, p. 34

[11] Lucchini, pp. 45-46

[12] Front view

[13] Viollet-le-Duc 1874, *Dict. mobilier* V, p.157

[14] Lucchini, pp. 45-46.

[15] Miller, p. 9.

[16] De Vries and Smith, p. 176

[17] Oakeshott, p. 117

[18] Oakeshott, p. 117.

[19] Viollet-le-Duc 1874, p.160

[20] Rothero, p. 25.

[21] Rothero p. 3.

[22] Nicolle (2000), P. 20.

[23] Gravett (1985), p. 41.

[24] Bennett, p.23.

[25] Nicolle (1983), p. 34.

[26] Rothero, p. 33

[27] Rothero, p. 3.

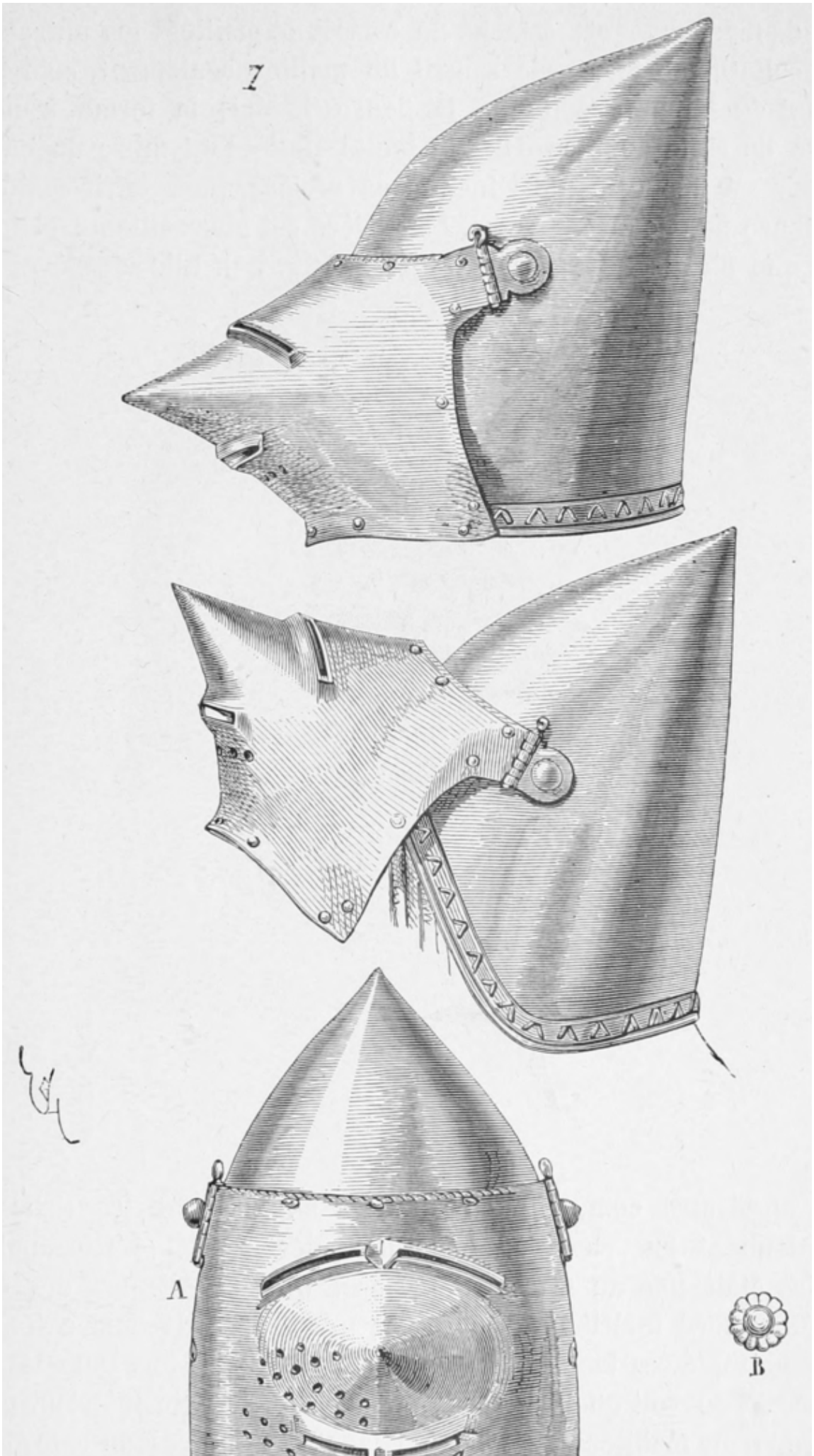
[28] Rothero, p. 35.

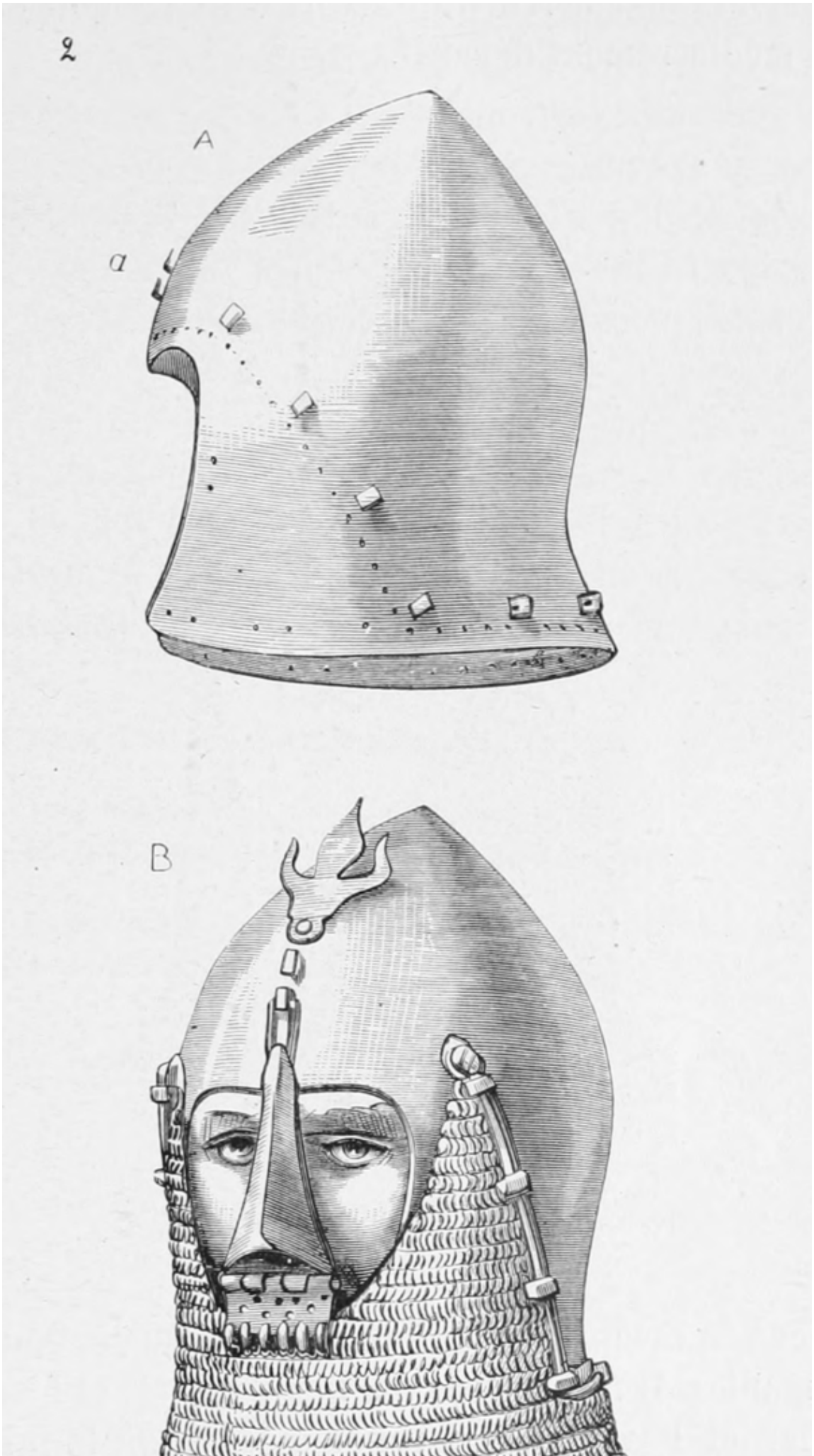
37.6 Bibliography

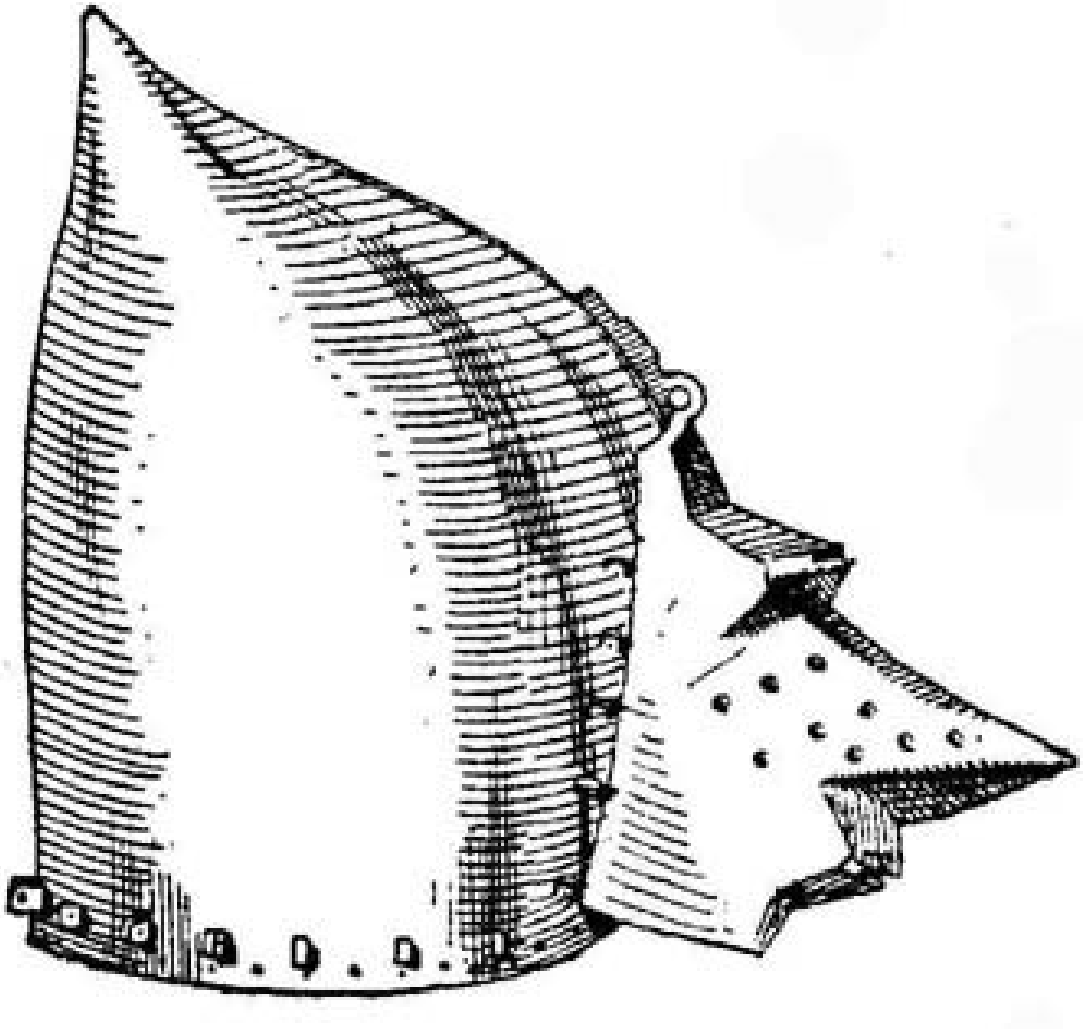
- Bennett, Matthew (1991) *Agincourt 1415: Triumph Against the Odds.* Osprey Publishing.
- Boeheim, Wendelin (1890). *Handbuch der Waffenkunde*. Leipzig: Verlag von E. A. Seemann. p. 34.
- Bradbury, Jim (2004). "14 Medieval Armour (A-Z of terms: Aventail ~ Bascinet)". *The Routledge Companion to Medieval Warfare*. Routlege. pp. 261–262.
- DeVries, Kelly and Smith, Robert Douglas (2007) *Medieval Weapons: An Illustrated History of Their Impact.* ABC-CLIO, Santa Barbara CA
- Gravett, Christopher (2008) *Knight: Noble Warrior of England 1200-1600.* Osprey Publishing.
- Gravett, Christopher (1985) *German Medieval Armies: 1300-1500.* Osprey Publishing.
- Lucchini, Francesco (2011) *Face, Counterface, Counterfeit. The Lost Silver Visage of the Reliquary of St. Anthony's Jawbone.*Published in *Meaning in Motion. Semantics of Movement in Medieval Art and Architecture,* edited by N. Zchomelidse and G. Freni. Princeton.
- Miller, Douglas (1979) *The Swiss at War 1300-1500.* Osprey Publishing.
- Nicolle, David (1983 *Italian Medieval Armies: 1300-1500.* Osprey Publishing.
- Nicolle, David (1999) *Arms and Armour of the Crusading Era, 1050-1350: Western Europe and the Crusader States.* Greenhill Books.
- Nicolle, David (1999-journal) *Medieval Warfare: The Unfriendly Interface.* The Journal of Military History, Vol. 63, No. 3 (Jul., 1999), pp. 579–599. Published by: Society for Military History.
- Nicolle, David (1996) *Knight of Outremer, 1187-1344.* Osprey Publishing.
- Nicolle, David (2000) *French Armies of the Hundred Years War.* Osprey Publishing.
- Oakeshott, Ewart (1980) *European Weapons and Armour: From the Renaissance to the Industrial Revolution*. Lutterworth Press.
- Rothero, Christopher (1981) *The Armies of Agincourt.* Osprey Publishing.
- Wise, Terrence (1975). "Helmet". *Medieval European Armies*. Osprey Publishing. pp. 15–19.
- Peterson, Harold Leslie (1968). "Helmet". *Encyclopaedia Britannica* **11**. London. pp. 335–.
- Viollet-le-Duc, Eugène Emmanuel (1874). "Bascinet". *Encyclopaedia Dictionnaire raisonné du mobilier français* **5**. Paris: V. A. Morel. p. 157.
- Viollet-le-Duc, Eugène Emmanuel (1875). "Heaume". *Encyclopaedia Dictionnaire raisonné du mobilier français* **6**. Paris: V. A. Morel. p. 118.

37.7 External links

- Spotlight: The 14th Century Bascinet (myArmoury.com article)

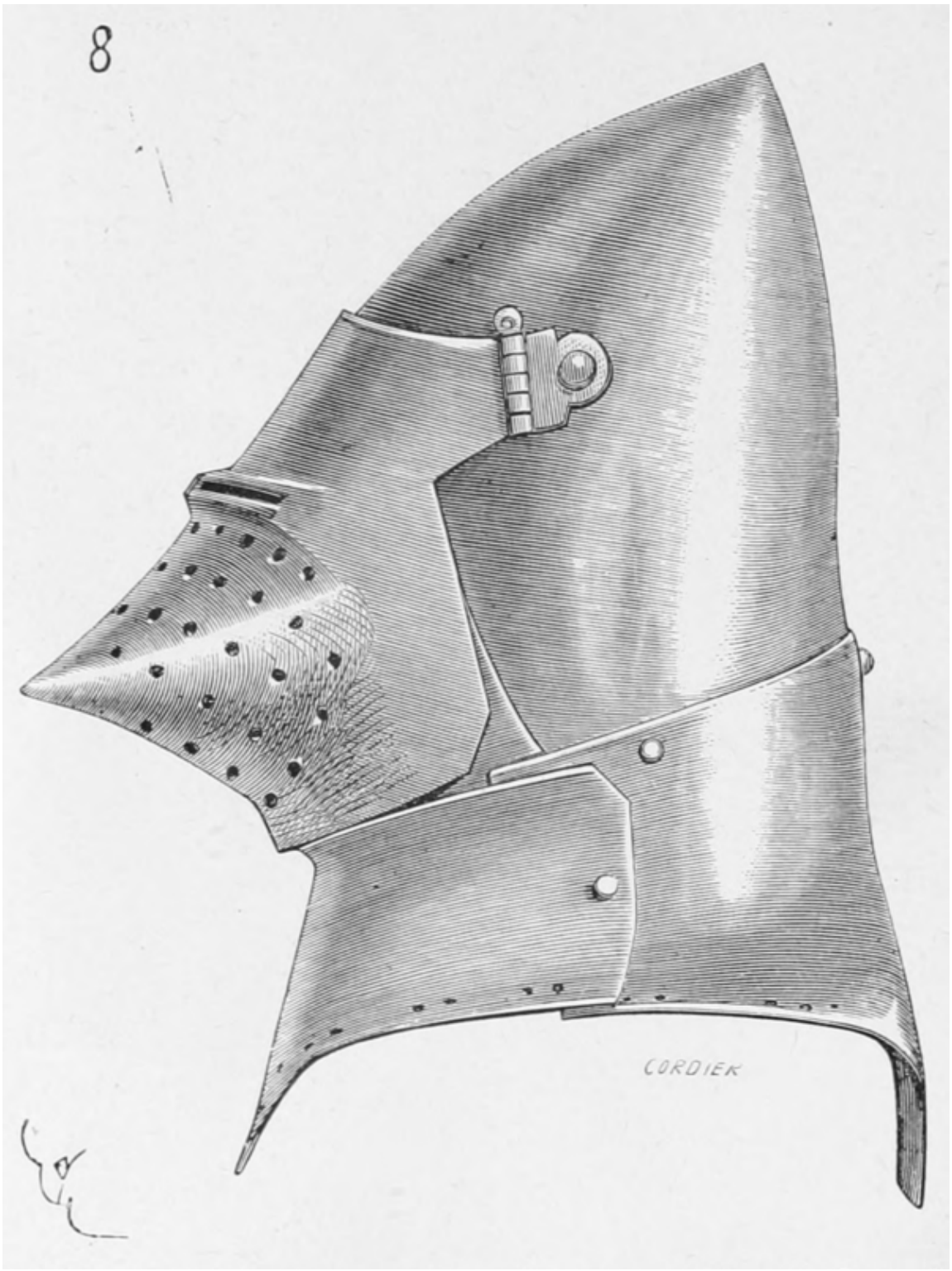

I
A
B


2
A
a
B

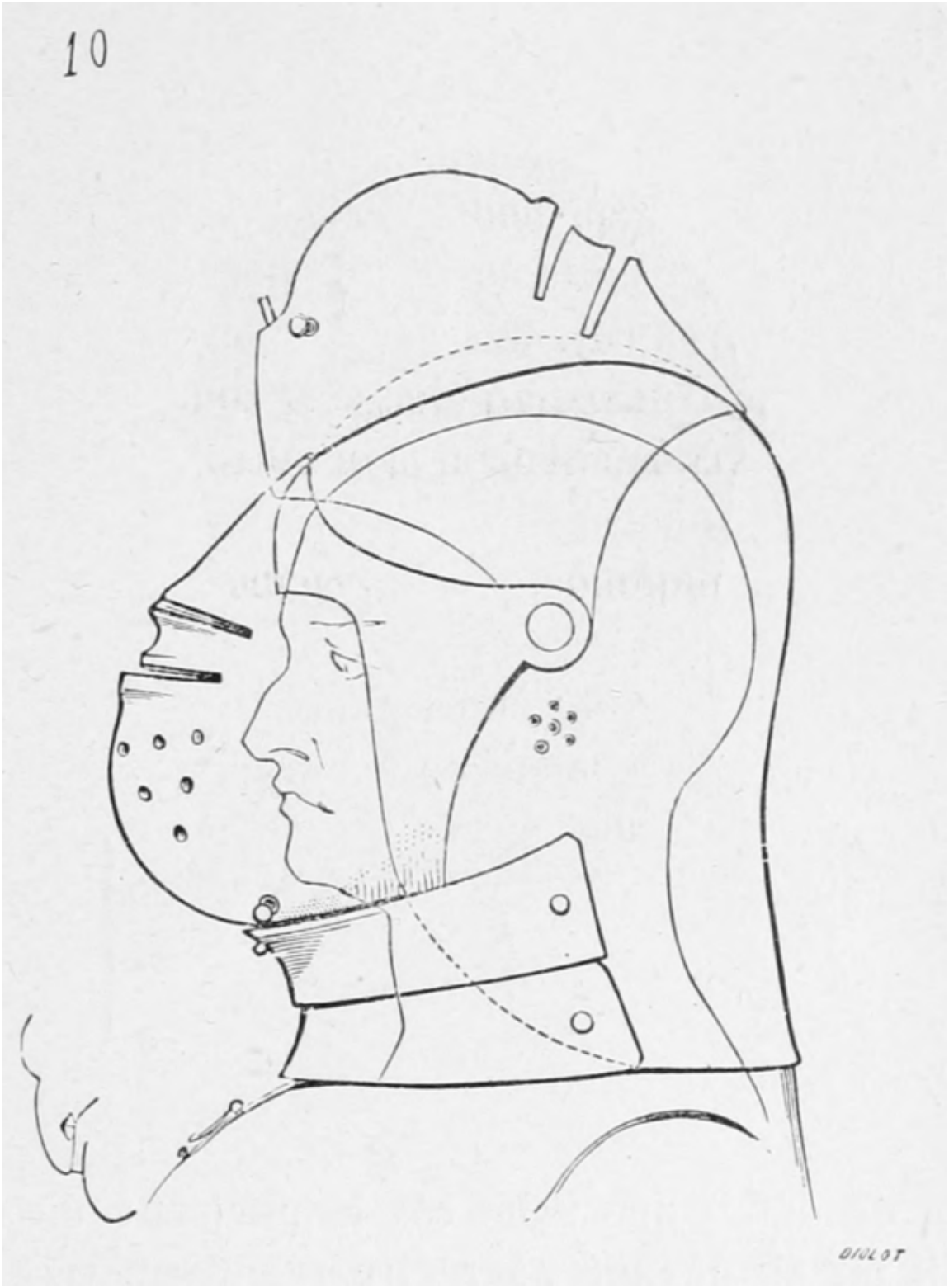


Bascinet fitted with a klappvisor

Bascinet, Milan, c. 1400: the "hounskull" or "pig faced" type of bascinet visor was considerably larger than earlier forms.[12]



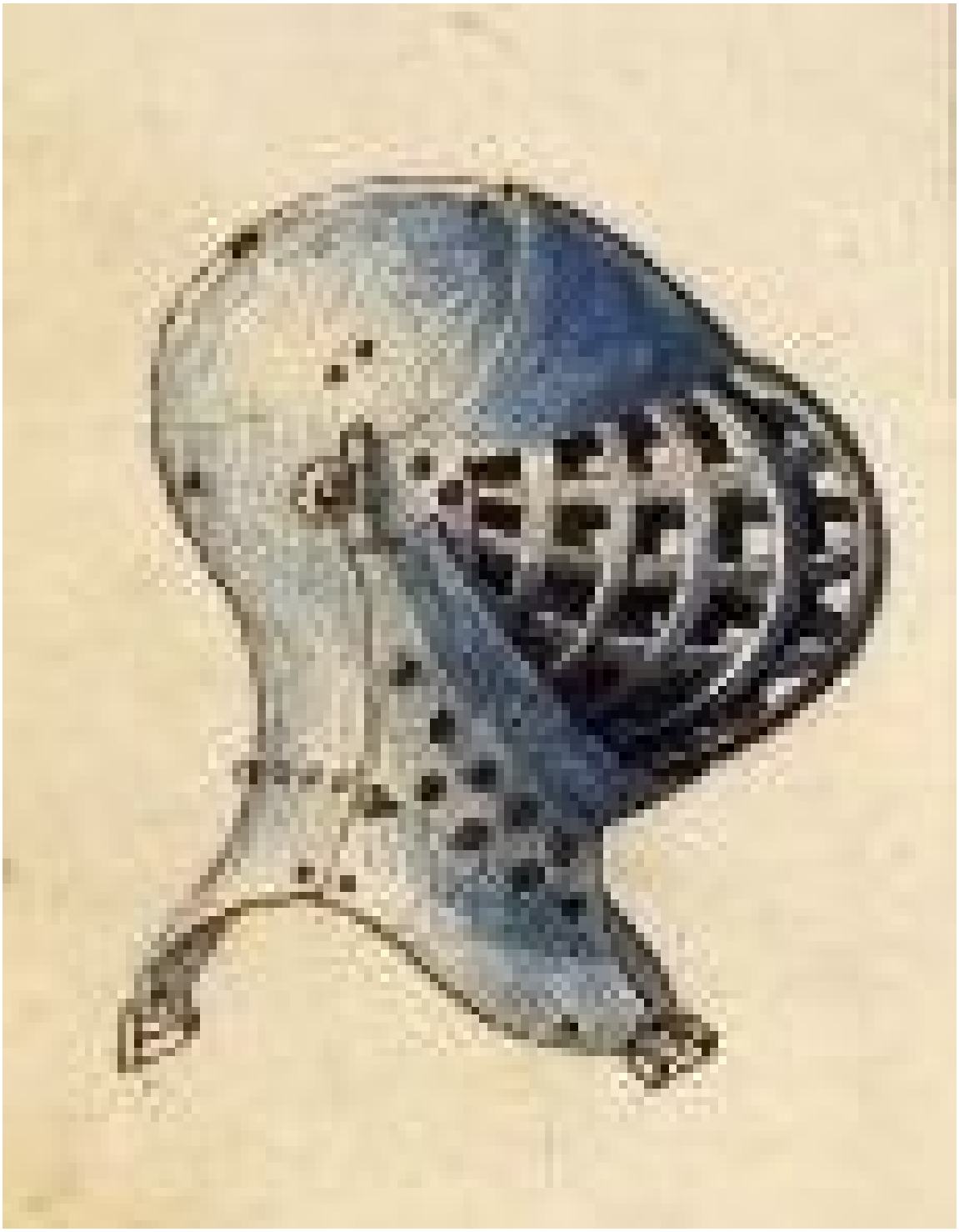
Early great bascinet, c. 1400, with plate gorget and exaggeratedly tall skull. Note how the skull of the helmet is riveted to the rear gorget plate.



Later great bascinet (c. 1440) with rounded skull and visor - showing the position of the wearer's head and the rotation of the visor

Illustration from a 15th-century manuscript showing horsemen wearing bascinets with the rounded visor used from c.1410

Knight wearing a great bascinet. The strap fixing the helmet to the breastplate is visible as is the impossibility of rotating the helmet. German painting of 1435, by Konrad Witz



A late-period great bascinet for tournament use. Note the skull and back gorget are formed in one piece, and there are strapping points to secure the helmet to the cuirass.

Chapter 38

Burgonet

German burgonet of classic form, 16th century

The **burgonet helmet** (sometimes called a **burgundian sallet**) was a Renaissance-era and early modern combat helmet. It was the successor of the sallet.

38.1 Characteristics

The burgonet helmet is characterised by a skull with a large fixed or hinged peak projecting above the face-opening, and usually an integral, keel-like, crest or comb running from front to rear. Attached to the skull are substantial hinged cheekpieces which usually do not meet at the chin or throat. A flange projects from the lower parts of the skull and cheekpieces to protect the back and sides of the neck. Though typically a relatively light helmet and open faced, a falling buffe, a sort of visor that was closed by being drawn up rather than down, was sometimes used. Some helmets, often termed "close burgonets", were made which took elements, such as the peak, crest and falling buffe, of the burgonet and combined them with the hinged bevor of the close helmet.[1][2]

38.2 Use

Commonplace throughout Europe, it first came into use early in the 16th century and had attained its classic form by c. 1550.[3] Accompanied by plate armour, burgonets were mostly worn by cavalry: cuirassiers, demi-lancers and, in Eastern Europe, hussars.

The Border Reivers, of the English-Scottish borderlands, were very fond of burgonets and the morion in Elizabethan times, and as a result reivers were often called *steil* (steel) *bonnets*.[4][5] Burgonets were also a popular helmet type among the Polish winged hussars, where they merged with types of lobster-tailed pot helmets (zischagge), often featuring a nasal bar or facial guard.

The burgonet was common among the mercenary Swiss infantry who were pikemen who could defend themselves against cavalry (perhaps taking helmets of this form as trophies). Following the appearance of the Adrian and Brodie helmets and the Stahlhelm, in the First World War, the Swiss experimented with a "streamlined" form of the burgonet for their own national helmet, but both designs were rejected.

The factors of utility of the burgonet over older helmets include:

- **Cost**—The main factor in the decision to wear one; burgonets were significantly cheaper than large closed-face helmets.
- **Encumbrance**—Close helmets were very bulky and heavy. It could be hard for the wearer to see, breathe or turn his head while wearing one. The burgonet, however, was light and had an open face that gave an advantage in offense.
- **Protection**—The burgonet was not as protective as heavier helms, but still afforded some protection. Having an open face could be remedied with a falling buffe.

38.3 References

[1] Oakeshott, pp. 214-217

[2] Gravett, pp. 18 and 32

[3] Oakeshott, p. 214

[4] George MacDonald Fraser, *The Steel Bonnets* (New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 1972), 86.

[5] Keith Durham, *The Border Reivers* (Oxford: Osprey Publishing, 1995), 46.

38.4 Bibliography

- Gravett, Christopher (2006) *Tudor Kight*. Osprey Publishing, London.
- Oakeshott, Ewart (1980) *European Weapons and Armour: From the Renaissance to the Industrial Revolution.* Lutterworth Press.

Intermediate helmet ("close burgonet") with the peak, crest and falling buffe of the burgonet, combined with the hinged bevor of a close helmet.

38.5 External links

- Spotlight: The Burgonet (myArmoury.com article)
- Burgonet for an officer, Nuremberg, circa 1570.

German burgonet, c. 1560, showing the open face of the helmet.

Chapter 39

Cervelliere

Cervelliere c. 1240/1250.

cervelliere (cervellière, cervelliera;[1] Latin: *cervellerium*,[2] *cerebrarium*,[3] *cerebrerium, cerebotarium*[4]) is a hemispherical, close-fitting[5] **skull cap** of steel or iron.[3] It was worn as a helmet during the medieval period.

39.1 History

The Cervelliere was first introduced during the late 12th century and was the primary head protection for Crusaders at that time. It was worn either alone or more often over or under a mail coif.[5] Additionally, a great helm could be worn over a cervelliere,[5] and by the late 13th century this would be the usual practice.

Over time, the Cervelliere experienced several evolutions. Many helmets become increasingly pointed and the back of the skull cap elongated to cover the neck, thus evolving into the bascinet.[6] Cerveillieres were worn throughout the medieval period and even during the Renaissance.[7] Cheap and easy to produce, they were much used by commoners and non-professional soldiers who could not afford more advanced protection.

Ancedotally, contemporary medieval literature credit the invention of the cervellière to astrologer Michael Scot ca. 1233,[1] though not seriously entertained by most historians.[1] The *Chronicon Nonantulanum*[note 1] records that the astrologer devised the iron-plate cap shortly before his own predicted death, which he still inevitably met when a stone weighing two ounces fell on his protected head[2][3]

39.2 Notes

[1] Planché gives *Nantubanum* but *Nonantulanum* is given by Du Cange

39.3 References

[1] Muendel 2002

[2] Du Cange 1842, p. 295

[3] Planché 1896, p. 88, volume 2

[4] Planché, loc. cit., citing *Chronicon Francisi Pepina*, lib. ii. cap. 50

[5] Nicolle & 1996 p-51

[6] Petersen 1968 (*Encyclopaedia Britannica*, "Helmet")

[7] Douglas Miller, *Armies of the German Peasants' War 1524-26* (Oxford: Osprey Publishing, 2003), 47.

- Fairholt, Frederick William (1896). *Costume in England: a history of dress to the end of the eighteenth century* **2** (4th ed.). London: George Bell and sons.
- Muendel, John (2002). "The Manufacture of the Skullcap (*Cervelliera*) in the Florentine Countryside during the Age of Dante and the Problem of Identifying Michael Scot as its Inventor" (JSTOR). *Early Science and Medicine* **7** (2): 93–120. doi:10.1163/157338202x00045.
- Petersen, Harold Leslie (1968). "Helmet". *Encyclopaedia Britannica* **11**. London. p. 335-.
- Nicolle, David (1996). *Knight of Outremer AD 1187-1344*. London: Osprey. p. 51. ISBN 1855325551.
- Planché, James Robinson (1896). *A cyclopaedia of costume or dictionary of dress* **2** (4th ed.). London: George Bell and sons.
- Du Cange, Charles Du Fresne (1842). *Glossarium mediae et infimae Latinitatis* **2**. Paris: Firmin Didot. p. 295.

39.4 External links

- http://www.charlesfleming-sca.com/military/cervelliere.htm

Chapter 40

Close helmet

Not to be confused with Enclosed helmet.

The **close helmet**, also called the **close helm** was a military helmet worn by knights and other men-at-arms in the Late Medieval and Renaissance eras. It was also used by some heavily armoured, pistol-armed, cuirassiers into the mid 17th century. It was a fully enclosing helmet with a pivoting visor and integral bevor.

40.1 Characteristics

The close helmet was developed from the later versions of the sallet and the superficially similar armet in the late 15th century. In contemporary sources it was sometimes also referred to as an 'armet', though modern scholarship draws a clear distinction between the two types.[1]

While outwardly very similar to the armet, the close helmet had an entirely different method of opening. Like the armet, the close helmet followed the contours of the head and neck closely, and narrowed at the throat, therefore it required a mechanical method for opening and closing. While an armet opened laterally using two large hinged cheekpieces, a close helmet instead opened vertically via an integral rotating bevor, which was attached to the same pivots as its visor. The moving parts were usually secured when closed by pivot-hooks engaging pierced staples. Alternatively, spring-loaded studs could be employed. The bevor was often held closed by a strap.[2]

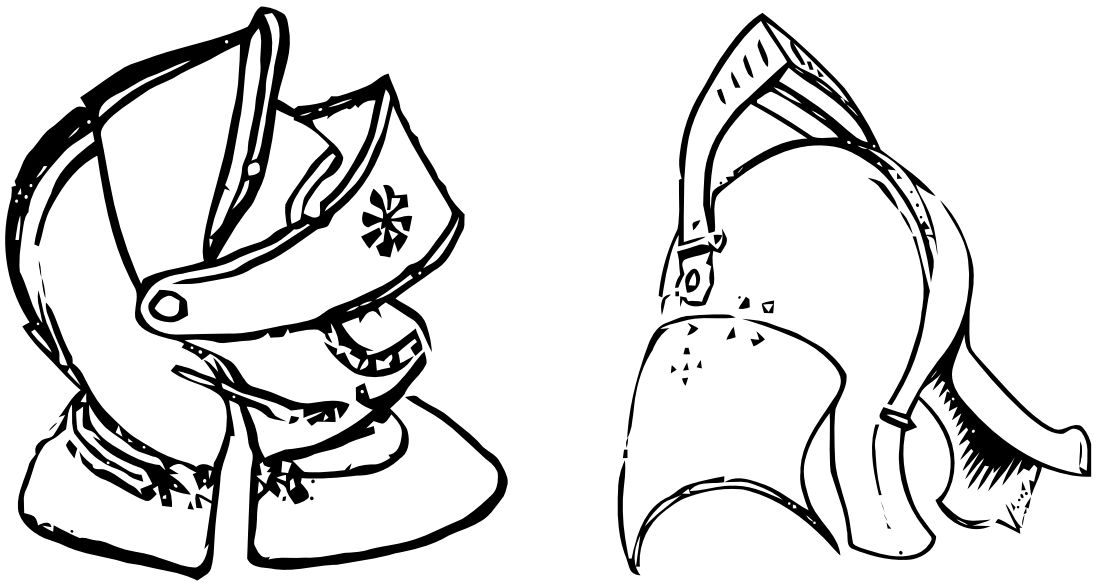
40.2 Variations

Beginning at around 1500 armour, including helmets, became more immediately influenced by fashion, especially in civilian clothing. As a result close helmets came in a huge variety of forms. The earliest close helmets resembled contemporary armets. In Italy, England and France in the period 1510-25 helmets were rounded with visors of the 'sparrow's beak' form, whearas in Germany the fluted 'Maximillian' style of armour produced distinctive types of helmet. The skulls of these helmets were globular with a low crest, many were decorated with fluting but some were plain. Two types of visor were produced, the Nuremberg form which had a 'bellows' shape, and the Augsburg form which was more projecting and is commonly called a 'monkey face'.[3][4]

From the 1520s a new, almost universal, variety of close helmet was developed. The previous forms of one-piece visor were replaced by a more complex system of face covering. The visor was split, below the eye-slits, into two independently pivoting parts. The lower half, called the ventail or upper bevor, was projecting and shaped like the prow of a modern ship. The upper visor, when closed, fitted within the upper edge of the ventail; it could be raised independently of the ventail by the provision of a projecting lifting peg. At the same time, on most helmets, the base of the bevor and the lower edge of the skull had laminated gorget plates attached. Crests, running from front to back tended to become taller in the course of the 16th century, becoming particularly exaggerated in some Italian-made examples, before becoming reduced in size at the century's close.[5][6]

There are many helmets surviving with 'grotesque' visors. These are thought to have been used as part of a 'costume armour' worn at parades and during festivities. Some of these masks portrayed the heads of animals or demons, whilst others were evidently for comic effect, being caricatures of the faces of their owners.[7]

French close helmet of the later split-visor type, c. 1555-1560



Comparison of close helm and armet in open position. Note the close helm uses a single pivot point for the double visor and bevor, while the armet has hinged cheek plates that lock in place.

40.3 Use

The close helmet was used on the field of battle, but was also popular for use in tournaments. Wealthy men often owned "garnitures", which were armours with interchangeable parts to suit heavy or light field use, and the many different forms of tournament combat. Garnitures would usually include elements for reinforcing the left side of the helmet for use in jousting. Such reinforcing pieces were called "double pieces" or "pieces of advantage".[8]

40.4 References

[1] Oakeshott, p. 121

[2] Oakeshott, p. 122

[3] Oakeshott, pp. 121-122

[4] Gravett, p. 17

[5] Oakeshott, pp. 218-221

[6] Gravett, p. 17

[7] Oakeshott, p. 123

[8] Gravett, pp. 20 and 62

40.5 Bibliography

- Gravett, Christopher (2006) *Tudor Kight*. Osprey Publishing, London.
- Oakeshott, Ewart (2000) *European Weapons and Armour. From Renaissance to the Industrial Revolution.* The Boydell Press, Woolbridge. ISBN 0-85115-789-0

German close helmet of the Maximillian type, with bellows visor, c. 1520

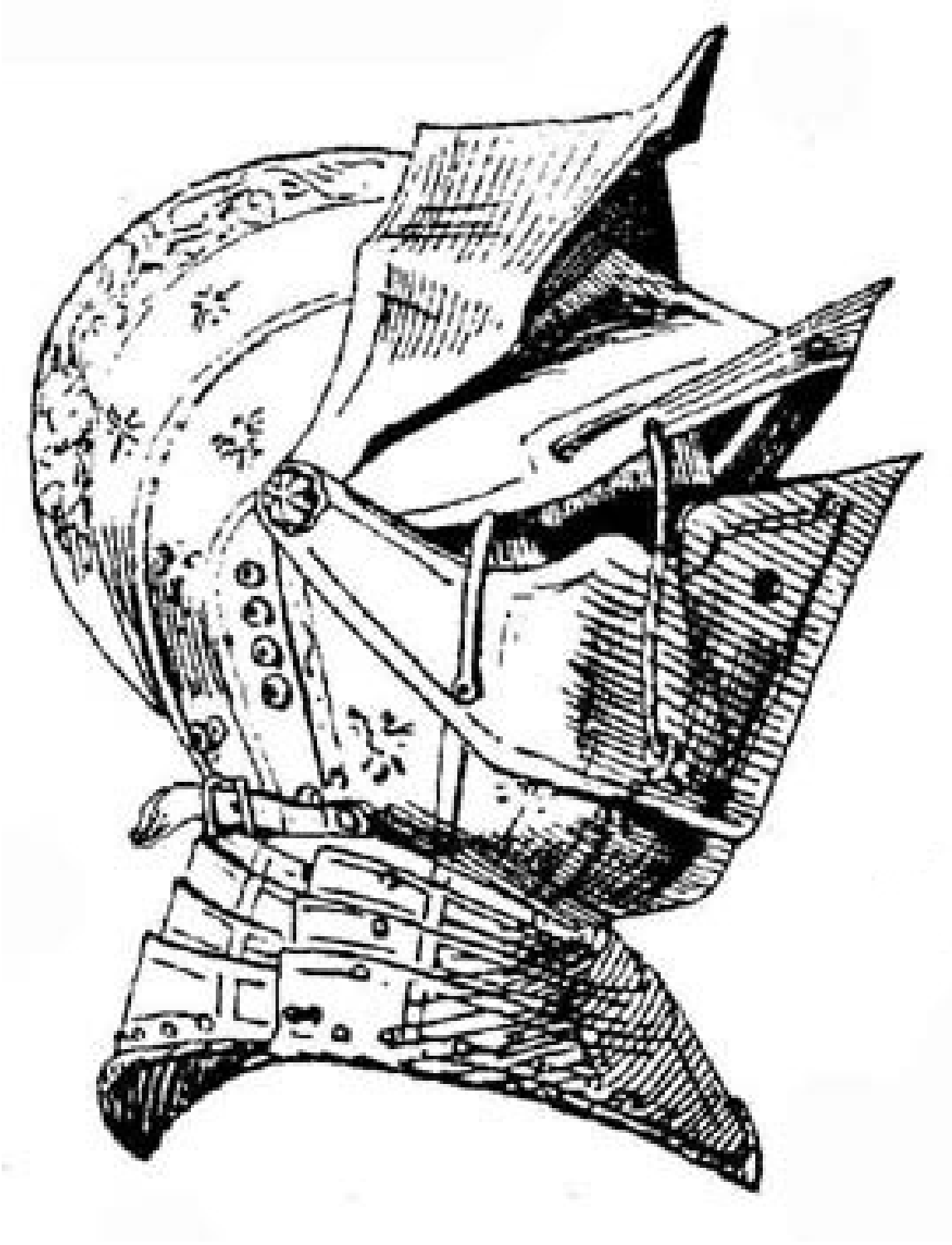
40.6 Further reading

- Edge, David. *Arms and Armour of the Medieval Knight*. London: Bison Books, 1988
- Wallace Collection Catalogue. *European arms and Armour Vol. 1: Armour*.

40.7 External links

- Modern reproduction patterns for the Close helmet

Close helmet with grotesque visor (modern reproduction of a German helmet of c. 1520 style)



A close helmet with a split visor (also with an extra pivoting peak), c. 1560 (notice that its bevor - secured by a strap - is attached to the same pivot as the visors)

Chapter 41

Enclosed helmet

Not to be confused with Close helmet.

The **enclosed helmet**,[1] also termed a **primitive great helm** or **early great helm**, was a type of Western European

Man in armour wearing a very well depicted enclosed helmet. 13th-century fresco showing a scene from "Iwein" by Hartmann von Aue in Rodenegg Castle, South Tyrol, Italy

helmet of the late 12th and early 13th century. It was the forerunner of the great helm.

41.1 Development and characteristics

The enclosed helmet covered the entire head, with full protection for the face and somewhat deeper coverage for the sides and back of the head than that found on previous types of helmets. It was developed near the end of 12th century and was largely superseded by the true great helm by c. 1240.[2] It is distinguishable from the great helm by a much greater depth to the face protection when compared to the depth of the helmet at the rear and sides.

It probably evolved from the nasal helmet, which had been produced in a flat-topped variant with a square profile by about 1180.[3] The enclosed helmet was created by adding a face-protecting plate, pierced for sight and breathing, and by extending downwards the back and sides of a flat-topped helmet, to produce a cylindrical helm.[4] From the evidence of extant contemporary illustrations the face protection was added first, probably as an extension of the pre-existing nasal. Some German illustrations dating to around 1180 show a bar at the end of the nasal covering the mouth, if such a bar had been extended and curved back to the brow of the helmet, a forerunner of a full face-plate would have been created.[5][6]

One of the earliest illustrations of a fully developed example of this type of helmet, with the addition of a fan-shaped crest, is depicted on the second Great Seal of Richard I of England dating to 1198.[7]

41.2 Use

The enclosed helmet would have been worn over a mail coif, with additional padding circling the head to cushion the helmet and help absorb the force of any blow.[8] The helmet may have arisen from a need for greater facial protection in response to the penetrating power of couched lances used in the closely packed “conrois” formation.[9] Or possibly as a response to an increased threat from archery.[10] The enclosed helmet was only used by men of knightly rank. Many soldiers, including knights, disliked the restriction to sight and hearing imposed by the enclosed helmet, and therefore the more open round-topped and flat-topped nasal helmets, plus 'kettle hats', continued in use alongside it into the mid 13th century.[11]

41.3 References

[1] For use of terminology see Gravett, Plate D and p. 54

[2] Gravett, Plate D and p. 54

[3] Gravett, p. 17

[4] Gravett, pp. 17 and 54

[5] Gravett, p. 17

[6] Nicolle (1988), Plate G, pp. 59 and 62

[7] Gillingham, Plate facing p. 152

[8] Nicolle (1988), Plate E and p. 57

[9] Nicolle (1988), pp. 25-26

[10] Nicolle (1996), p. 50

[11] Nicolle (1988), p. 27 - illustration of Maciejowski Bible c. 1250

41.4 Bibliography

- Gillingham, John (1978). *Richard the Lionheart.* London: Weidenfeld & Nicolson. ISBN 0-297-77453-0.
- Gravett, Christopher (1993) *Norman Knight 950-1204 AD*, Osprey, London.
- Nicolle, David, (1988) *The Crusades*, Osprey, London.
- Nicolle, David, (1996) *Knight of Outremer 1187-1344 AD*, Osprey, London.

Knights wearing enclosed helmets. German manuscript c. 1215 - Henrik van Veldekes

Chapter 42

L'Eplattenier helmet

L'Eplattenier helmet, on display at Morges military museum.

The **L'Eplattenier helmet** was a prototype military helmet designed for the Swiss Army by Charles L'Eplattenier. Deemed too expensive to produce in mass, it was shunned in favour of the Imboden helmet. They are now prized collectors' items.

42.1 External links

-
- World-War-Helmets.com - Swiss helmet model 1918

Chapter 43

Falling buffe

The **Falling buffe** is 16th Century armour for the throat and lower face. It evolved from the bevor and was composed of several lames, retained in place by spring catches, which could be lowered for better ventilation and vision.

Falling buffe

Chapter 44

Frog-mouth helm

The **frog-mouth helm** (or **Stechhelm** meaning *stinging helmet* in German) was a type of great helm, appearing from around 1400 and lasting into the first quarter of the 16th century.[1] The helmet was primarily was used by mounted knights for tournaments rather than on the battlefield.[2]

The frog-mouth analogy was drawn from the way the ocularium of the helmet (the slit through which the wearer could see) had the appearance the open mouth of a frog. During jousting tournaments, the helmet offered a better degree of protection from lances that had splintered on impact with body armour. Early examples of the helmet were a made from a single piece of metal, while later dated helmets had hinged constructions that could be disassembled.

44.1 History

Appearing in the 15th and 16th century in Germany, the helmet became popular for jousting due to the improved protection of the eyes it offered. Early one-piece examples were later improved with hinged varieties. In the late 15th century, it became customary for the helmet to be mounted with screws onto the wearer's cuirass, though this only allowed the wearer to look forward.

Later versions had hinges and could be opened in the front for ventilation, while also "folding" around the wearer's head to put on and "unfolding" to be removed. The helm had vents allowing the wearer to breathe more easily whilst using it, as well as allowing non-muted noise to enter into the helm. Underneath the helm, the wearer traditionally had a leather cowl to protect from concussive impacts. The cowl was attached with leather straps and cords fastened to the helmet, so that a certain degree of head movement was guaranteed. A popular jousting technique was, at the last minute, to pull the head up. This completely obscured the vision for the wearer, but it protected the eyes from the splinters of the lance as it broke on his armour.

44.2 References

[1] "The Great Helm". myarmoury.com. Retrieved 15 February 2015.

[2] Grancsay, Stephen V. (1956). *A Jousting Harness*. Philadelphia Museum of Fine Art Bulletin. pp. 3–7.

German stechhelm, *c. 1500*

Chapter 45

Great helm

The **great helm** or **heaume**, also called **pot helm**, **bucket helm** and **barrel helm**, is a helmet of the High Middle Ages which arose in the late twelfth century in the context of the Crusades and remained in use until the fourteenth century. They were used by knights and heavy infantry in most European armies between about 1220 to 1540 AD.

45.1 History

In its simplest form, the great helm was a flat-topped cylinder of steel that completely covered the head and had only very small openings for the eyes and mouth. Later designs gained more of a curved design, particularly on the top, to deflect or lessen the impact of blows.

The great helm ultimately evolved from the nasal helmet, which had been produced in a flat-topped variant with a square profile by about 1180.[1] From this type of helmet an intermediate type, called an 'enclosed helmet' or 'primitive great helm', developed near the end of the 12th century. In this helmet the expansion of the nasal produced a full face-plate, pierced for sight and breathing. This helmet was largely superseded by the true great helm by c. 1240.[2]

A later variant with a more conical top is known as a 'sugarloaf helm'. In Spanish they are called *yelmo de Zaragoza*, referring to Zaragoza where they were introduced for the first time in the Iberian peninsula.[3]

Although the great helm offered vastly superior protection than previous helmets, such as the nasal helm and spangenhelm, it limited the wearer's peripheral vision, and in addition to being heavy, the mass-produced form (flat-topped without ventilation holes) provided little ventilation and could quickly overheat in hot weather. Knights usually wore the great helm over a mail coif (hood) sometimes in conjunction with a close-fitting iron skull cap known as a cervelliere. The later development of the cervelliere, the bascinet, was also worn beneath the great helm; men-at-arms would often remove the great helm after the first clash of lances, for greater vision and freedom of movement in melee combat. The bascinet had a mail curtain attached, a camail or aventail, which superseded the coif. Mail throat and neck defences such as these were made obsolete when plate gorgets were introduced, around 1400.

The bascinet evolved from its early skull cap form to supersede the great helm for combat. The great helm fell into disuse during the 15th century; however it was used commonly in tournaments where a version of the great helm, the frog-mouthed tilting helm, evolved.[4]

45.2 Decoration

The Great Helm was often blackened, lacquered or painted, and frequently bore decorations such as:

- Ventilation decoration (crosses and symbols)
- Visor (horizontal and vertical "cross") decorations
- Crests, such as crowns, feathers, metal wings (found on helmets belonging to Teutonic Knights).

13th century German great helm with a flat top to the skull.

Great helms were worn with cloth and fiber padding on the inside, here shown removed from the helmet.

45.3 Contemporary reenactors

The great helm is today especially popular amongst live-action role players and in medieval re-enactment such as the Society for Creative Anachronism. It is inexpensive, easy to manufacture with even rudimentary equipment (metal scissors, drill, rudimentary anvil, rivets and hammer), and provides good protection for the head against both sharp and blunt weapons. Its biggest drawbacks are poor ventilation and air circulation, especially if worn with closed-cell foam padding, making it very hot in warm weather.

Modern reenactment versions of great helms weigh 1.5 to 3 kg. For safety reasons, they are made from thicker steel than medieval originals but are not overly heavy, cumbersome, or uncomfortable. Although visor slits are usually only

some 20–30 mm wide, they do not greatly restrict the field of vision as they are very close to the wearer's eyes.[5]

45.4 Notes and references

[1] Gravett, p. 17

[2] Gravett, Plate D and p. 54

[3] David Nicolle, Medieval Warfare Sourcebook vol I

[4] http://www.myarmoury.com/feature_spot_ghelm.html

[5] Source Noticeboard in Stafford Castle medieval armoury.

45.5 References

- Gravett, Christopher (1993) *Norman Knight 950-1204 AD*, Osprey, London.

45.6 External links

- "Surviving examples, and illustrations". Archived from the original on 2011-04-01.
- The Field of a Shield and the Heraldic Tinctures a discussion of heraldry and great helm crests
- Arador Armour Library design and construction techniques for replica great helms
- Medieval Helm Crests design and construction techniques for helm crests
- Construction guide for a historical combat re-enactment great helm

Chapter 46

Hounskull

A **hounskull** was a form of steel helmet worn in Europe in the Middle Ages, almost invariably by knights and other mounted men-at-arms, from the middle of the 14th century until approximately 1420. It offered extensive protection for the wearer's face, at the cost of visibility, but its distinctive visor could be raised or lowered at will.

46.1 Form

The hounskull was a form of bascinet with a visor covering the entire face. It is the visor which gives the helmet its name, as this resembles the face of a hound, with a protruding muzzle in order to better protect the face from blows and to grant greater ventilation (which was largely afforded the wearer, when the visor was down, through holes in the "muzzle," such holes being either on the right side of the "muzzle" with additional holes near the mouth,[1] or on both sides).

The visor swung up to uncover the wearer's face when he was not in combat, to grant him better visibility and unrestricted ventilation. This was accomplished in one of two ways. The most common form of visor in Central Europe was held on by a single hinge fastened to the center of the top of the visor, called a *Klappviser*. The other version had two pivot bolts on either side of the visor attaching it to the bascinet at the temples, and this was the most common form found in Southern, Western and Northwestern Europe.

The wearer peered through two vision slots when the visor was lowered. The vision slots were either relatively flush with the visor, as was the custom in Western Europe, or elevated on mounts on the visor, as was commonly the case in Central Europe.

As with all bascinets, the helmet generally had attachment points for armour to protect the neck and upper body, initially an aventail of mail and, later, plate armour. The chain aventail could have a decorative cloth cover.[2]

46.2 Usage

The addition of the visor to the bascinet came about due to the ongoing need to protect the face of the man-at-arms. The great helm had been increasingly abandoned for the bascinet in the first half of the fourteenth century, but the bascinet did not protect the face, and this led to increasing casualties to the wearer, particularly in the Hundred Years War, due to the dominance of the longbow as a weapon. Various expedients were adopted, eventually culminating in a full hounskull helmet with its visor soon after 1350.

This helmet became so ubiquitous that it was virtually the symbol of the knight during the second half of the fourteenth century, sometimes illustrated as worn by all knightly combatants in period illustrations. The hounskull lingered in use for some time after that, although it was decidedly out of fashion after the second decade of the fifteenth century. The last time it is depicted in widespread use in period art is by the "Armagnac" mercenaries who invaded Switzerland in 1444.

A hounskull helmet, 14th century

Milan hounskull, c. 1400

46.3 Modern terminology

The English term "hounskull" is considered by some historians to have been a derivation of the German term for the helmet, *hundsgugel*, meaning "hound's hood."[3] The Victorian historians who described the helmet often referred to it as a "pig-faced" helmet, although that term was not used in the Medieval period.

46.4 Notes

[1] Singman and McLean, *Daily Life*, 148-149

[2] Nicolle, *Italian Medieval Armies*, 35

[3] Gravett, *English Medieval Knight*, 26.

46.5 References

- Gravett, Christopher. *English Medieval Knight, 1300-1400*. Osprey Publishing, 2002. ISBN 1-84176-145-1.

Cologne hounskull with centrally hinged visor

- Nicolle, David. *Italian Medieval Armies, 1300-1500*. Osprey Publishing, 1983. ISBN 0-85045-477-8.
- Singman, J.; and McLean, W. *Daily Life in Chaucer's England*. Greenwood Press, 1999. ISBN 0-313-29375-9.

Chapter 47

Kabuto

For other uses, see Kabuto (disambiguation).

Kabuto (□, □) is a type of helmet first used by ancient Japanese warriors, and in later periods, they became an important part of the traditional Japanese armour worn by the samurai class and their retainers in feudal Japan.

47.1 History

Japanese helmets dating from the fifth century (long before the rise of the samurai class) have been found in excavated tombs. Called *mabizashi-tsuke kabuto* (visor-attached helmet), the style of these ancient helmets came from China and Korea and they had a pronounced central ridge.[1][2]

The kabuto was an important part of the equipment of the samurai, and played a symbolic role as well, which may explain the Japanese expressions, sayings and codes related to them. One example is *Katte kabuto no o o shimeyo* (lit. "Tighten the string of the kabuto after winning the war"). This means don't lower your efforts after succeeding (compare to "not to rest on one's laurels"). Also, *kabuto o nugu* (lit. "to take off the kabuto") means to surrender.

47.2 Parts of the kabuto

Media related to Kabuto (individual parts) at Wikimedia Commons

The basic parts of the kabuto include:

- *Hachi*, a dome composed of overlapping elongated plates called *tate hagi-no-ita*
- *Tehen*, a small opening at the top of the *hachi*, usually fitted with a *tehen kanamono* (an ornamental grommet, often resembling a chrysanthemum)
- *Mabizashi*, a brim or visor on the front of the *hachi*
- *Ukebari*, a cloth lining inside the *hachi*
- *Tsunamoto*, mounting points for attaching crests
- *Kasa jirushi no kan*, a ring at the back of the *hachi* for securing a *kasa jirushi* (helmet flag)
- *Fukigaeshi*, wing-like or ear-like projections to the sides of the *hachi*
- *Shikoro*, a suspended neck guard composed of multiple overlapping lames
- *Shinobi-no-o* (chin cord), often used to secure the *mengu* (facial armour)

A typical kabuto features a central dome constructed of anywhere from three to over a hundred metal plates riveted together. These were usually arranged vertically, radiating from a small opening in the top. The rivets securing these

metal plates to each other could be raised (a form known as *hoshi-bachi*) or hammered flat (a form known as *suji-bachi*); another form, called *hari bachi*, had the rivets filed flush. Some of the finer *hachi* were signed by their makers, usually from one of several known families, such as the Myochin, Saotome, Haruta, Unkai, or Nagasone families.

A small opening in the top of the kabuto, called the *tehen* or *hachimanza* (seat of the war god, Hachiman), was thought to be for passing the warrior's top knot through. Although this practice was largely abandoned after the Muromachi period, this opening may have been retained for purposes of ventilation or simply as an artifact of how the plates were riveted together.[3] The *tehen* was usually decorated with *tehen kanamono*, which were rings of intricately worked, soft metal bands often resembling a chrysanthemum.[3][4] *Zunari kabuto* and *momonari kabuto* were two helmet forms that did not usually have an opening at the top.

Kabuto incorporated a suspended neck guard called a *shikoro*, usually composed of three to seven semicircular, lacquered metal or oxhide lames, attached and articulated by silk or leather lacing, although some *shikoro* were composed of 100 or more small metal scales in a row.[5] This lamellar armour style, along with *kusari* (mail armour), was the standard technology of Japanese body armour, and some *shikoro* were made of mail sewn to a cloth lining (a form called *kusari shikoro*).

The kabuto was secured to the head by a chin cord called *shinobi-no-o*, which would usually be tied to posts or hooks on the *mengu* (facial armour) or simply tied under the chin.

Kabuto are often adorned with crests called *datemono* or *tatemono*;[6] the four types of decorations were the *mae-date* (frontal decoration), *wakidate* (side decorations), *kashiradate* (top decoration), and *ushirodate* (rear decoration). These can be family crests (mon), or flat or sculptural objects representing animals, mythical entities, prayers or other symbols. Horns are particularly common, and many kabuto incorporate *kuwagata*, stylized deer horns.

- Various *hachi* shapes: 1)*Nari Akoda*, 2)*Goshozan*, 3)*Heichozan*, 4)*Koseizan*, 5)*Tenkokuzan*, 6)*Zenshozan*
- Many wavy shaped *hagi-no-ita* plates form a *hachi*. A colourful *tehen kanamono* can be seen at the top.
- *Kasa jirushi no kan*, a ring for securing a *kasa jirushi* (helmet flag) to the *hachi*
- Lacquered iron *shikoro* (neck guard)
- The *fukigaeshi* can be seen to both sides of the *mabizashi* (brim), and the *shinobi-no-o* (cord) secures the *mengu* (facial armour).
- Various *kabuto maedate* (front crests)
- *Maedate tsunamoto* (mounting point for front crest)
- *Wakidate tsunamoto* (mounting point for side crest)

47.3 Types of kabuto

47.3.1 Suji bachi kabuto

Suji bachi kabuto is a multiple-plate type of Japanese helmet with raised ridges or ribs showing where the helmet plates come together; the rivets may be filed flat or they may be left showing, as in the *hoshi-bachi kabuto*.

47.3.2 Hoshi-bachi kabuto

Hoshi-bachi kabuto (star helmet bowl) with protruding rivet heads, have large rivets (*o-boshi*), small rivets (*ko-boshi*) and a rivet with a chrysantemoid-shaped washer at its base (*za-boshi*). *Hoshi-bachi kabuto* could also be *suji bachi kabuto* if there were raised ribs or ridges showing where the helmet plates came together.

47.3.3 Hari bachi kabuto

Hari bachi kabuto is multiple-plate Japanese *hachi* with no ribs or ridges showing where the helmet plates come and the rivets are filed flush.

47.3.4 Zunari kabuto

The zunari kabuto is a simple, five-plate design.

47.3.5 Tatami kabuto

A great number of simpler, lightweight, folding, portable armours for lower-ranking *samurai* and foot soldiers (*ashigaru*) were also produced. These were called *tatami* armour, and some featured collapsible *tatami kabuto* (also called choshin-kabuto), made from articulated lames.[4][7][8] Tatami kabuto did not use rivets in their construction; instead, lacing or chain mail was used to connect the pieces to each other.

47.3.6 Kaji kabuto

Kaji kabuto were a type of helmet worn by samurai firemen.

47.3.7 Jingasa

Jingasa were war hats made in a variety of shapes, worn by *ashigaru* (foot soldiers) and *samurai*, which could be made from leather or metal.[9]

47.3.8 Kawari kabuto or strange helmet

During the Momoyama period of intense civil warfare, kabuto were made to a simpler design of three or four plates, lacking many of the ornamental features of earlier helmets. To offset the plain, utilitarian form of the new helmet, and to provide visibility and presence on the battlefield, armorers began to build fantastic shapes on top of the simple helmets in *harikake* (papier-mâché mixed with lacquer over a wooden armature), though some were constructed entirely of iron. These shapes mimicked forms from Japanese culture and mythology, including fish, cow horns, the head of the god of longevity, bolts of silk, head scarves, Ichi-no-Tani canyon, and axe heads, among many others. Some forms were realistically rendered, while others took on a very futuristic, modernist feel.

- A Kofun period (fifth century) early kabuto made of iron and gilt copper, from Ise Province
- *Za-boshi kabuto* (chrysantemoid-shaped washer at the base of the rivet), this is also a *suji bachi kabuto*, as it has raised ridges.
- *Eboshi* kabuto
- *Eboshi* kabuto
- *Kaji kabuto*
- *Jingasa, ashigaru* type, constructed from hardened leather (*nerigawa*)
- A *kawari kabuto*
- A *kawari kabuto*

47.4 In popular culture

- The *kabuto*, along with the German *Stahlhelm*, was the inspiration for the helmet of Darth Vader in the *Star Wars* films.[10]
- The Shredder from the Teenage Mutant Ninja Turtles franchise is often depicted wearing one. In some versions of the plot, this helmet is called “Kuro Kabuto” or “black kabuto”.
- Kabuto Yakushi, named after a kabuto helmet in episode 336, is an antagonist in the anime Naruto.
- Kabuto (Pokemon)

47.5 See also

- Mengu
- Japanese armour

47.6 References

[1] Bryant, Anthony J. (1991). *Early Samurai: 200-1500 AD*. Angus McBride, Ill. Osprey Publishing. p. 45.

[2] Sinclaire, Clive (2004). *Samurai: The Weapons and Spirit of the Japanese Warrior*. Globe Pequot Press. p. 26.

[3] Louis, Thomas; Ito, Tommy (2006). *Samurai: The Code of the Warrior*. New York: Sterling Publishing Co. p. 94.

[4] Ratti, Oscar; Westbrook, Adele (1973). *Secrets of the samurai: a survey of the martial arts of feudal Japan*. Boston, MA: Tuttle Publishing. p. 211.

[5] The Encyclopedia Americana: a library of universal knowledge, Volume 15 p.774

[6] Bryant, Anthony J. (1994). *Samurai 1550-1600*. Angus McBride, Illust. Oxford: Osprey Publishing. p. 25.

[7] Transactions of the Asiatic Society of Japan - Page 279 Asiatic Society of Japan - 1881.

[8] Arms and Armor of the Samurai Ian Bottomley, Anthony Hopson Random House Value Publishing, 1993 p.92

[9] Deal, William E. (2007). *Handbook to life in medieval and early modern Japan*. Oxford: Oxford University Press. p. 172. ISBN 978-0-19-533126-4.

[10] Henderson, Mary (1997). *Star Wars: The Magic of Myth*. Bantam Books. p. 189. ISBN 0-553-37810-4.

47.7 External links

Harikake kabuto, a type of kawari kabuto which used papier-mâché mixed with lacquer for the elaborate decoration (the shell) on an iron bowl, beginning of the Edo Period, 17th century . Ann and Gabriel Barbier-Mueller Museum, Dallas (Texas)

A suji bachi *kabuto with the cords tied under the chin; note the prominent front crest, the recurving* fukigaeshi*, and the* shikoro *composed of hundreds of interlaced scales.*

A suji bachi *kabuto*

Edo period iron zunari kabuto

Chapter 48

Kettle hat

Medieval kettle hat, worn with a mail coif

A **kettle hat** is a type of helmet made of steel in the shape of a brimmed hat. There are many design variations. The only common element is a wide brim that afforded extra protection to the wearer. It gained its common English language name from its resemblance to a metal cooking pot (the original meaning of *kettle*).

The kettle hat was common all over Medieval Europe. It was called *Eisenhut* in German and *chapel de fer* in French (both names mean "iron hat" in English). It was worn by troops of all types, but most commonly by infantry. The wide brim gave good protection against blows from above, such as from cavalry swords, and was very useful in siege warfare as the wide brim would protect the wearer from projectiles shot or dropped from above. They were first produced (as reported in Documentaria Anglo, 1478) in England around 1011, 55 years before the famous Battle of Hastings. These hats, although cheap, were not admired because they were considered only suitable for infantry and did not have the high grace or extravagance of a knightly helm like the bascinet or great helm. However, those

World War II British Mark II kettle steel helmet

who did use it proved that it was something worthwhile. In many films, English men-at-arms and foot soldiers are often seen wearing these helms. An extra benefit was that the rim protected from direct sunlight, preventing getting dazzled.

Hat-shaped helmets were not just a European invention. Japanese *Ashigaru* infantrymen wore the *jingasa*, a helmet shaped like the Japanese form of the conical Asian hat.

When helmets reappeared in World War I, the kettle hat made its comeback as the British and U.S. Brodie helmet (often called **tin hat**), as well as the French Adrian helmet. These kettle helmets were also used in World War II by the British, Commonwealth forces (such as Australia and Canada), and also by the Americans later in the war. The British produced a helmet for civilian use in World War II designed to give more protection to the head and neck from above.

Chapter 49

Lobster-tailed pot helmet

Lobster-tailed pot helmet. This example has a single sliding nasal bar and fixed peak to protect the face, Dutch mid 17th century

The **lobster-tailed pot helmet**, also known as the **zischagge**, horseman's pot and harquebusier's pot, was a type of post-Renaissance combat helmet. It became popular in Europe, especially for cavalry and officers, from c. 1600; it was derived from an Ottoman Turkish helmet type. The helmet gradually fell out of use in most of Europe in the late 17th century; however, the Austrian heavy cavalry retained it for some campaigns as late as the 1780s.

The French term *capeline* was also used for this helmet, however, usage of this word was not precise. "*Capeline*" was indiscriminately used to denote various types of hat, and helmets other than the lobster-tailed pot.

49.1 Origin

The lobster-tailed pot helmet had an oriental origin, being derived from the Ottoman Turkish 'chichak' (Turkish - *çiçak*) helmet, which developed in the 16th century. It was adopted by the Christian states of Europe in the early 17th century. The chichak was almost identical to the later European helmets - it had a forward projecting peak, sliding bar nasal, cheekpieces and neck guard; only its tendency to have a conical rather than rounded skull was distinctive.[1] The European derivative of this helmet saw widespread use during the Thirty Years War when it became known as the *zischagge*, a Germanisation of the original Turkish name.

49.2 Characteristics

The lobster-tailed pot had a rounded skull-piece, which was sometimes fluted. The skulls of English-made helmets were usually formed from two sections, joined by a raised comb running from front to back; the skulls of helmets manufactured on the continent were most often raised from a single-piece of metal. Cheekpieces, commonly made in one piece but occasionally articulated, were attached to the skull by leather strapping; however, the better quality examples are sometimes hinged. To protect the face there was either a fixed forward projecting peak that incorporated a sliding nasal bar retained by a large screw, or a hinged peak with three attached bars. Finally, the helmet had a laminated defence (or a single-piece of plate ridged to imitate separate lames) to protect the back of the head and neck that was said to resemble the tail of a lobster.[2][3] Another common name for the helmet was the “harquebusier’s pot”, the harquebusier being the most common type of cavalry in Western Europe during the 17th century.[4] The single nasal-bar type was characteristic of Continental Europe, whilst the three-barred type with a pivoting peak was more widely used in the British Isles.[5] Many European-made lobster-tailed pot helmets were later imported to Britain during the English Civil War. Occasionally, older helmets like the burgonet or sallet were modified to resemble the 'lobster-pot.'[6] As stated by General George Monck in 1644, the “headpiece with three small bars” was intended to be pistol-proof.[7]

49.3 Decoration and appearance

The appearance and finish of lobster-tailed pots varied greatly, from the highly decorated, superb-quality examples made for individual commanders down to crudely executed “munition-quality” types, which were mass-produced to equip large numbers of ordinary cavalry troopers. High quality helmets could be decorated using a range of techniques, including repoussé, engraving and blue-and-gilt finishes. An extant helmet made for King James II of England had the three bar face defence replaced by a pierced openwork plate depicting the full royal arms of England, sight being afforded by spaces within the design. Many helmets were blackened or browned as a treatment to weatherproof them and protect against rust. The better quality helmets given this treatment would often have had their sombre appearance relieved by the use of numerous gilded rivet heads. Some of the most flamboyantly decorated helmets were produced for the Polish winged hussars, with metal crests and enlarged, decoratively shaped, nasals being not uncommon.[8] A number of extant helmets have tubular plume-holders attached, this, taken with the evidence of contemporary illustrations, indicates the use of feather plumes.[9]

49.4 Use

This form of helmet was widely used during the Thirty Years War and English Civil War; it was commonly known as a *zischagge* in Germany and a 'horseman’s pot' or 'three-barred pot' in Britain; the term 'lobster-tailed pot' is widely used in modern scholarship. The typical cavalryman of the period, the harquebusier, would have worn the helmet with a buff coat, bridle-hand gauntlet and breastplate and backplate. It was also sometimes worn by a more heavily armoured type of cavalry, the cuirassier, combined with three-quarter armour.[10] It was used by cavalry on both sides of the English Civil War including Oliver Cromwell's Ironside cavalry.[11] The common misconception of Cavaliers wearing plumed wide-brimmed hats whilst the Roundheads wore helmets is eloquently disproved by a surviving order signed by Charles I himself for 33 'potts’, along with other cavalry armour, for the use of his own troop of horse in 1642. Another order, this time from the Parliamentarian authorities, dating to 1644 for 300 “potts with three barres English” indicates that each helmet, no doubt of basic quality, cost 7 shillings.[12]

Similar helmets were worn in the 17th century by Polish winged hussars and were termed "*szyszak*" in Polish, again

a derivative of the original Turkish name.[13] Austrian cuirassiers were equipped with the lobster-tailed pot helmet as late as the 1780s, long after its use had died out elsewhere, when campaigning against the Ottoman Turks.[14]

49.5 Notes

[1] Robinson pp. 62-63

[2] Blackmore, pp. 15-16

[3] Oakeshott, pp. 221-222

[4] Tincey, p. 5

[5] Blackmore, p. 15

[6] Blackmore, p. 16

[7] Tincey, p. 11

[8] Bull, pp. 111, 118, 121

[9] Blackmore, pp. 15-16

[10] Tincey, pp. 11-12

[11] Blackmore pp. 15-16

[12] Tincey, p. 12

[13] Brzezinski, p. 7

[14] Haythornthwaite, p. 16

49.6 References

- Blackmore, D. (1990) *Arms & Armour of the English Civil Wars*, Trustees of the Royal Armouries. ISBN 0-948092-08-4
- Brzezinski, R. (McBride, A. - illustrator) (1987) *Polish Armies 1569-1696 (1)*, Osprey Publishing, London.
- Bull, S. (1991) *An Historical Guide to Arms and Armour,* Studio Editions, London, ISBN 1 85170 723 9
- Haythornthwaite, P. (1994) *The Austrian Army, 1740-1780: Cavalry* Osprey Publishing. ISBN 1-85532-415-6
- Oakeshott, Ewart (1980) *European Weapons and Armour: From the Renaissance to the Industrial Revolution*. Lutterworth Press.
- Robinson, H.R., (2002) *Oriental Armour*, Courier Dover Publications. ISBN 0-486-41818-9
- Tincey, J. (McBride, A. - illustrator) (1990) *Soldiers of the English Civil War (2) Cavalry*, Osprey Publishing, ISBN 0-85045-940-0

Modern reproduction of a helmet of James II of England made in 1686, the face protection is in the form of an openwork depiction of the royal coat-of-arms

Polish Hussar szyszak *with elaborate wing-like crests of pierced metal, 17th century*

Chapter 50

Mempo

"Mengu" redirects here. For the Burmese village, see Meng-u. For the emperor known as Mengu, see Möngke Khan. For the Turkish name, see Mengü.

Mempo (also **menpō**, **mengu**[1][2][3] or occasionally **men yoroi**[4]), is the term for various types of facial armour worn by the samurai class and their retainers in feudal Japan. Types of Japanese facial armour include the *somen*, *menpō*, *hanpo* and *happuri*.

50.1 Description

Mempo were facial armour which covered all or part of the face and provided a way to secure the top-heavy *kabuto* (helmet). The *Shinobi-no-o* (chin cord) of the kabuto would be tied under the chin of the mempo.[5] There were small hooks called *ori-kugi* or posts called *odome* located on various places to help secure the kabuto's chin cord. Mengu may be constructed from iron or leather, or a combination of both. They may have a lacquered or rusted type of finish and can include a variety of facial details, such as moustaches, fierce teeth and a detachable nose.[6][7] Most mempo with the exception of the happuri had a small hole underneath the chin for sweat drainage.

Mempo are similar to masks worn by armored cavalry and infantry in ancient Chinese armies from the Han Dynasty to the Song Dynasty.

50.2 Types of mempo

50.2.1 Somen

Somen covered the entire face.

-
-
-
-

50.2.2 Menpō

Menpō covered the face from the nose down to the chin.

-
-

-
-

50.2.3 Hanbō (hanpō)

Hanbo covered the lower face from under the nose to the chin.

-
-
-

50.2.4 Happuri

Happuri covered the forehead and cheeks.

-
-

50.2.5 Parts of the mengu

- *Odome*, an attachment post for securing the chin strap of a kabuto (helmet).
- *Ori-kugi*, an attachment hook for securing the chin strap of a kabuto (helmet).
- *Ase nagashi no ana*, a drain hole (or tube) for perspiration located under the chin of various mengu.
- Yodare-kake, throat guard on various mengu.

50.3 See also

- Japanese armour
- Kabuto

50.4 References

[1] *Arms and armor of the samurai: the history of weaponry in ancient Japan*, Authors Ian Bottomley, Anthony Hopson, Contributor Anthony Hopson, reprint, Publisher Crescent Books, 1993, Original from the University of Virginia, Digitized Aug 26, 2008, ISBN 0-517-10318-4, ISBN 978-0-517-10318-0 P.77,178, 186

[2] *The Watanabe Art Museum Samurai Armour Collection (Kabuto & Mengu, Volume I*) Trevor Absolon (Author), Brian Snoody (Illustrator), Barry Till (Preface), Anthony J. Bryant (Editor), Trevor Absolon & Dave thatcher (Photographer), Ian Bottomley (Introduction), Ian Bottomley & Anthony J. Bryant (Foreword) Publisher(Toraba), 2011 P.234

[3] *Samurai: The Weapons and Spirit of the Japanese Warrior*, Author Clive Sinclaire, ,Publisher Globe Pequot, 2004, ISBN 1-59228-720-4, ISBN 978-1-59228-720-8 P.30,138

[4] *Samurai 1550-1600*, Anthony J. Bryant, Angus McBride, Osprey Publishing, 1994 p.28

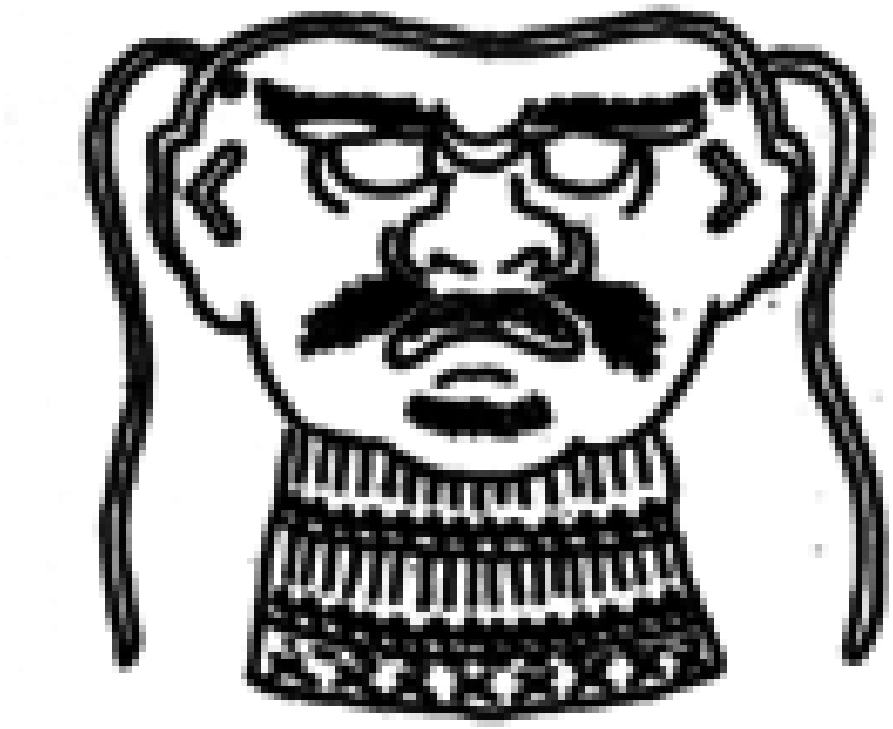
[5] *Samurai 1550-1600*, Anthony J. Bryant, Angus McBride, Osprey Publishing, 1994 p.28

[6] *Samurai: The Weapons and Spirit of the Japanese Warrior*, Author Clive Sinclaire, ,Publisher Globe Pequot, 2004, ISBN 1-59228-720-4, ISBN 978-1-59228-720-8 P.30,138

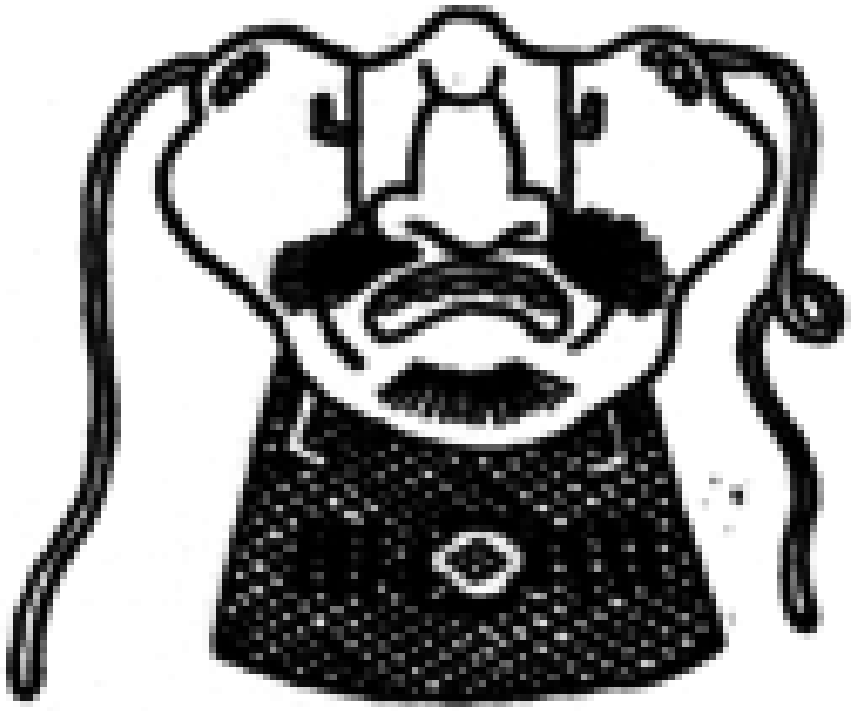
[7] he Watanabe Art Museum Samurai Armour Collection (Kabuto & Mengu, Volume I) Trevor Absolon (Author), Brian Snoody (Illustrator), Barry Till (Preface), Anthony J. Bryant (Editor), Trevor Absolon & Dave thatcher (Photographer), Ian Bottomley (Introduction), Ian Bottomley & Anthony J. Bryant (Foreword) Publisher(Toraba), 2011 P.234]

50.5 External links

- Samurai Arms and Armor
- Anthony Bryant's online Japanese armour manual



面類



類當

猿

Chapter 51

Morion (helmet)

A Spanish conquistador *comb morion (c. 17th century)*

A **morion** is a type of open helmet used from the middle 16th and early 17th centuries, usually having a flat brim and a crest from front to back. Its introduction was contemporaneous with the exploration of North, Central, and South America. Explorers like Hernando de Soto and Coronado may have supplied them to their foot soldiers in the 1540s.

An ornate morion with cheek-guards from the Philippine Moros (c. 18th/19th century). Note the slight resemblance to the lobster tail pot.

51.1 History

The iconic morion, though popularly identified with early Spanish explorers and conquistadors, was not in use as early as the conquest of Mexico at the hands of Hernan Cortez or Francisco Pizarro's conquest of the Incas in South America. Thirty to forty years later, it was widely used by the Spanish, but also common among foot soldiers of many European nationalities, including the English; the first English morions were issued during the reign of Edward VI.[1] Low production costs aided its popularity and dissemination although officers and elite guards [2] would have theirs elaborately engraved to display their wealth and status.[3][4]

The crest or comb on the top of the helmet was designed to strengthen it. Later versions also had cheek guards and even removable faceplates to protect the soldier from sword cuts.[5]

The morion's shape is derived from that of an older helmet, the *Chapel de Fer*, or "Kettle Hat."[6] Other sources suggest it was based on Moorish armor and its name is derived from *Moro*, the Spanish word for Moor.[7] The *New Oxford American Dictionary*, however, derives it from Spanish *morrión*, from *morro* 'round object'.[8] The *Dictionary of the Spanish Language* published by the Royal Spanish Academy indicates that the Spanish term for the helmet, *morrión*, derives from the noun *morra*, which means "the upper part of the head".[9]

In England this helmet (also known as the **pikeman's pot**) is associated with the New Model Army, one of the first professional militaries.[10] It was worn by pikemen, together with a breastplate and buff coat as they stood in phalanx-like pike and shot formations, protecting the flanks of the unarmored musketeers.[11]

A late 16th century Italian cabasset, somewhat similar to the morion though it lacks the comb and has a taller crown, and is a different shape.

It provided protection during the push of pike maneuvers known for their high casualty rates.[12] Although mostly issued to Oliver Cromwell's Parliamentarian troops, many Cavaliers wore the morion as well, leading to confusion in battles; soldiers risked being shot by their own allies. It was for this reason uniforms were introduced to identify armies. First these were simple colored sashes but soon the Roundheads introduced red coats which were retained by the army after the 1660 Restoration of Charles II.[13]

Surviving morions from its 1648 siege have been unearthed and preserved at Colchester Castle [14] along with a lobster tail pot, a helmet associated with Cromwell's heavily armored Ironside cavalry.

Some captured Spanish armor was worn by Native Americans as late as the 19th century as protection from bullets and a sign of their status.[15] The most famous of these was the Comanche chief Iron Jacket who lived in Texas and wore armor that originally belonged to a conquistador.[16]

In the Philippines, the native Moro people adopted the morion and burgonet design for helmets (as well as chainmail and horn coats) during the Spanish–Moro Wars and the Moro Rebellion. The indigenously produced helmets are usually made of iron or brass and are elaborately decorated with floral arabesque designs, usually in silver. They had a large visor and neck guard, movable cheek guards, a high crest, and three very tall feathered plumes reaching 60 cm (24 in) inserted on the front.[17][18]

51.2 Cabasset

A similar helmet, the Cabasset, was introduced around the same time in Italy.[19] Like its Spanish counterpart, it was worn by infantry in the pike and shot formations. The stalk-like projection on the top resembled a pear, which is how it gained its name.[20] [21] It was popular in 16th century England and was used during the Civil War. Several of these helmets were taken to the New World by the Pilgrim fathers, and one of these has been found on Jamestown Island.[22]

51.3 Modern times

- The morion may have influenced the design of the Adrian Helmet issued to French and Italian troops during World War I. Both are of a similar shape and have a comb reinforcing the top of the helmet.[23]
- The comb morion (with a red crest added) is part of the uniform of the Pope's Swiss Guards.[24] A Swiss guardsman in his morion appears on the Vatican City commemorative 2 Euro coin.
- From 1928 until 1961, the morion served as the logo of automobile manufacturer DeSoto, named after the 16th century explorer Hernando de Soto. It appeared as the hood ornament on cars of the 1940s and 1950s like the DeSoto Deluxe.[25]
- The seal of the city of Cupertino, California, includes a morion.
- The morion appears on the insignia of the 53rd Infantry Brigade Combat Team, the largest of the Florida Army National Guard, in tribute to the early militias of Florida under Spanish rule.

51.4 In popular culture

- Helmets like the morion and cabasset feature in historical dramas set in the Elizabethan period, generally worn by extras portraying guards.[26] Such works include the films *Elizabeth: The Golden Age*, *Cromwell*, *Witchfinder General* and BBC TV series like *The Tudors* and *Blackadder 2*.[27]
- In both the stage and film versions of the musical *Man of La Mancha*, the soldiers of the Spanish Inquisition all wear morion helmets, and in the film (but not the play), Don Quixote's helmet is a morion with a makeshift visor artificially attached to it, as Cervantes describes in his novel *Don Quixote de la Mancha*. (The play uses a regular knight's helmet with a non-makeshift visor.)
- In *Dances With Wolves* the Indian chief presents Lt. Dunbar with a morion.
- In the Disney movie *Pocahontas*, English soldiers like Captain John Smith wear morions.[28]
- Morions appear in the fantasy film *The Chronicles of Narnia: Prince Caspian* They are worn by the Telmarines, soldiers of the evil king Miraz and descendants of pirates from Earth.[29]
- In *The Lord of the Rings: The Two Towers*, orc sappers wearing morions plant explosives in the wall of Helm's Deep. Other Uruk-hai wear helmets resembling the lobster tail pot.

A member of the Swiss Guard with a black morion in the Vatican.

51.5 References

[1] European comb morion

[2] Morion,late 16th century, associated with the Munich town guard

[3] Morion by Pompeo della Cesa, Milan, 1585 - 1590 on view at Lennart Viebahn Arms & Armour

[4] Morion helmet

[5] Pikeman's Pot

[6] Spanish Conquistador Helmet - Comb Morion, helmet replica.

[7] Hermitage Museum

[8] *New Oxford American Dictionary* (2nd ed., 2005), p. 1102.

[9] Morrión, *Diccionario de la Lengua Española*, 22nd ed., 2001

[10] C.H. Firth. *Cromwell's Army* 4th ed., 1972, p. 70

[11] Eventplan photograph

[12] Oman, Charles. *A History of the Art of War in the Sixteenth Century*. London: Methuen & Co., 1937.

[13] Barthorp, Michael. *British Infantry Uniforms Since 1660*. Blandford Press 1982 Ltd, 1982. ISBN 1-85079-009-4

[14] Colchester Castle museum

[15] *The Fighting Cheyennes*, by George Bird Grinnell (2004)

[16] Iron Shirt

[17] Herbert W. Krieger (1899). *The Collection of Primitive Weapons and Armor of the Philippine Islands in the United States National Museum*. Smithsonian Institution - United States National Museum - Bulletin 137. Washington: Government Printing Office.

[18] George Cameron Stone (1934). *A Glossary of the Construction, Decoration, and Use of Arms and Armor in All Countries and in All Times: Together with Some Closely Related Subjects*. Southwork Press. p. 66.

[19] Encyclopedia of Historical Weapons

[20] Pear - Stalk Cabasset, Northern Italy, 1580 - 1590 on view at Lennart Viebahn Arms & Armour

[21] Cabasset replica

[22] Cabasset found at Jamestown

[23] Adrian helmet

[24] Swiss guards on the Vatican website

[25] Classic Desoto cars

[26] Footage from *Elizabeth: The Golden Age*

[27] Footage from *Blackadder* on YouTube

[28] *Pocahontas* at the Internet Movie Database

[29] Narnia on Disney website

Chapter 52

Nasal helmet

The **nasal helmet** was a type of combat helmet characterised by the possession of a projecting bar covering the nose and thus protecting the centre of the face; it was of Western European origins and was used from the Early Middle Ages until the High Middle Ages.

52.1 Early forms

The nasal helmet was characterised by the possession of a nose-guard, or 'nasal', composed of a single strip of metal that extended down from the skull or browband over the nose to provide facial protection. The helmet appeared throughout Western Europe late in the 9th century, and became the predominant form of head protection, replacing previous types of helmet whose design was ultimately based on Late Roman types such as the 'ridge helmet' and early helmets of spangenhelm construction. Early nasal helmets were universally conical in shape. The skull could be raised from a single sheet of iron or be of composite, segmented (spangenhelm) construction. The spangenhelm variety was, in general, the earlier method of construction. Single-piece skulls, being technically more difficult to produce, became more common with the increase in metallurgical skill over time.[1]

Though nasals had been used on earlier helmets, and on contemporary helmets found in Byzantium, Slavic Eastern Europe and the Middle East, those characteristic of the nasal helmet were in general larger and were fully integrated into either the skull or browband of the helmet.[2] The nasals of other helmets tended to be riveted to the skull either directly or as part of a, 'T' shaped, combined nasal and eyebrow-piece.[3]

52.2 Later developments

From being uniformly conical in shape, the skull of the nasal helmet became more varied during the 12th century. For most of the century nasal helmets with a forward deflected apex, often called the 'Phrygian cap' shape, were in widespread use. It is possible that the deflection of the apex of the skull was the natural result of making the front of the helmet thicker than the rest of the helmet during the process of raising the skull from sheet iron.[4][5][6]

Though still used, the conical type of helmet declined in popularity during the latter half of the 12th century and round-topped nasal helmets came into fashion. King Richard I of England is depicted wearing a round-skulled nasal helmet on his first Great Seal (1189).[7]

A further type of nasal helmet developed in the late 12th century. This helmet had a flat top and a square profile. This form of nasal helmet was the forerunner of deeper, cylindrical helmets with greater facial protection, enclosed helmets, and eventually the great helm.[8] The existing nasal formed the basis for increased facial protection, eventually, by 1200, producing a face covering plate which was pierced for sight and ventilation.[9]

The helmet began to lose popularity at the end of the 12th century to helmets that provided more facial protection, and although the nasal helm lost popularity amongst the higher classes of knights and men-at-arms, they were still used by archers to whom a wide field of vision was crucial. Round-skulled nasal helmets can also be seen worn by a proportion knights throughout the French Maciejowski Bible dating to 1250.[10] No doubt some knights preferred the better vision and hearing afforded by this more open helmet.

11th century Moravian nasal helmet, Vienna. One of the few remaining examples of such helmets.

52.3 Use

The nasal helmet would usually have been worn over a mail coif, which protected the lower parts of the head, throat and neck. The coif could be a separate item of armour or be formed as an extension of the mailcoat itself. The existence of rivets and holes around the lower edge of these helmets indicate that they were lined in some manner, though no linings as such have survived. Practical considerations suggest that linings must have been adjustable to ensure a secure fit.[11]

The nasals of these helmets were often so large that the wearer was unrecognisable to an observer. The celebrated incident at the Battle of Hastings, illustrated on the Bayeux tapestry, where William the Conqueror had to lift his helmet to show his troops that he was still alive is an indication of the anonymity nasal helmets produced.[12]

52.4 References

[1] Gravett, p. 11

[2] Gravett, p. 20

[3] D'Amato, p. 33 and 47

[4] Gravett, p. 17

[5] Nicolle (1988), p. 55

[6] Nicolle (1987), p. 9

[7] Nicolle (1988), p. 56

[8] Nicolle (1988), p. 57

[9] Gravett, p. 17

[10] Nicolle (1988), p. 27

[11] Gravett, pp. 9-11

[12] Nicolle (1987), p. 56

52.5 Bibliography

- D'Amato, Raffaele (2010) *The Varangian Guard 988-1453,* Osprey, London.
- Gravett, Christopher (1993) *Norman Knight 950-1204 AD*, Osprey, London.
- Nicolle, David, (1988) *The Crusades*, Osprey, London.
- Nicolle, David, (1987) *The Normans*, Osprey, London.

Helmet of Saint Wenceslaus, Prague

Nasal helmet of the 'Phrygian cap' shape, 12th century

Nasal helmet with a rounded skull, latter part of the 12th century

The knight at the centre is wearing a flat-topped helmet. Murder of Thomas Becket, manuscript c. 1200

Chapter 53

Pickelhaube

The ***Pickelhaube*** (plural *Pickelhauben*; from the German *Pickel*, “point” or “pickaxe”, and *Haube*, “bonnet”, a general word for “headgear”), also ***Pickelhelm***, was a spiked helmet worn in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries by German military, firefighters, and police. Although typically associated with the Prussian army, the helmet was widely imitated by other armies during this period.[1]

53.1 History

53.1.1 Origins

The Pickelhaube was originally designed in 1842 by King Frederick William IV of Prussia,[2] perhaps as a copy of similar helmets that were adopted at the same time by the Russian military.[3] It is not clear whether this was a case of imitation, parallel invention, or if both were based on the earlier Napoleonic cuirassier. The early Russian type (known as “The Helmet of Yaroslav Mudry") was also used by cavalry, which had used the spike as a holder for a horsehair plume in full dress, a practice also followed with some Prussian models (see below).

53.1.2 Adoption by Prussian and other armies

Frederick William IV introduced the Pickelhaube for use by the majority of Prussian infantry on October 23, 1842 by a royal cabinet order.[4] The use of the Pickelhaube spread rapidly to other German principalities. Oldenburg adopted it by 1849, Baden by 1870, and in 1887, the Kingdom of Bavaria was the last German state to adopt the Pickelhaube (since the Napoleonic Wars, they had had their own design of helmet, called the *Raupenhelm*).

From the second half of the 19th century onwards, the armies of a number of nations besides Russia, (including Bolivia, Colombia, Chile, Ecuador, Mexico, Portugal, Norway, Sweden and Venezuela,) adopted the Pickelhaube or something very similar.[5] The popularity of this headdress in Latin America arose from a period during the early 20th century when military missions from Imperial Germany were widely employed to train and organize national armies.

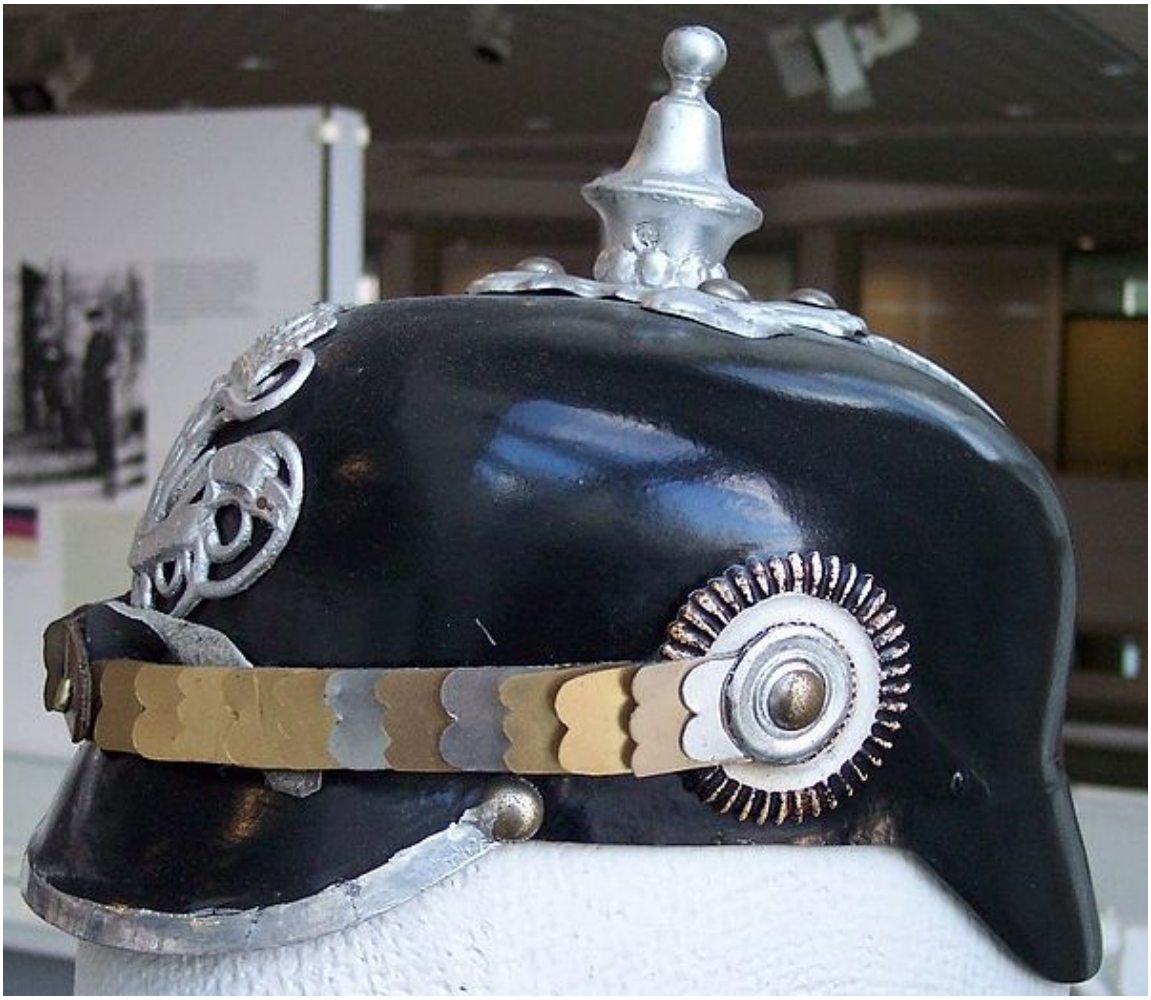
The Russian version initially had a horsehair plume fitted to the end of the spike, but this was later discarded in some units. The Russian spike was topped with a grenade motif. At the beginning of the Crimean War, such helmets were common among infantry and grenadiers, but soon fell out of place in favour of the fatigue cap. After 1862 the spiked helmet ceased to be generally worn by the Russian Army, although it was retained until 1914 by the Cuirassier regiments of the Imperial Guard and the Gendarmerie. The Russians prolonged the history of the pointed military headgear with their own cloth Budenovka in the early 20th century.

53.2 Derivatives

The Pickelhaube also influenced the design of the British army Home Service helmet, as well as the custodian helmet still worn by police in England and Wales.[6] The linkage between Pickelhaube and Home Service helmet was however

Bavarian Military Pickelhaube

not a direct one, since the British headdress was higher, had only a small spike and was made of stiffened cloth over a cork framework, instead of leather. Both the United States Army and the US Marine Corps wore helmets of the British pattern for full dress between 1881 and 1902.



Prussian police leather Pickelhaube

53.3 Design of German pickelhaube

The basic Pickelhaube was made of hardened (boiled) leather, given a glossy-black finish, and reinforced with metal trim (usually plated with gold or silver for officers) that included a metal spike at the crown. Early versions had a high crown, but the height gradually was reduced and the helmet became more fitted in form, in a continuing process of weight-reduction and cost-saving. In 1867 a further attempt at weight reduction by removing the metal binding of the front peak, and the metal reinforcing band on the rear of the crown (which also concealed the stitched rear seam of the leather crown), did not prove successful.

Some versions of the Pickelhaube worn by German artillery units employed a ball-shaped finial rather than the pointed spike. Prior to the outbreak of World War I in 1914 detachable black or white plumes were worn with the Pickelhaube in full dress by German generals, staff officers, dragoon regiments, infantry of the Prussian Guard and a number of line infantry regiments as a special distinction. This was achieved by unscrewing the spike (a feature of all Pickelhauben regardless of whether they bore a plume) and replacing it with a tall metal plume-holder known as a *trichter*. For musicians of these units, and also for an entire cavalry regiment of the Saxon Guard, this plume was red.

Aside from the spike finial, perhaps the most recognizable feature of the Pickelhaube was the ornamental front plate, which denoted the regiment's province or state. The most common plate design consisted of a large, spread-winged eagle, the emblem used by Prussia. Different plate designs were used by Bavaria, Württemberg, Baden, and the other German states. The Russians used the traditional double-headed eagle.

German military Pickelhauben also mounted two round, colored cockades behind the chinstraps attached to the sides of the helmet. The right cockade, the national cockade, was red, black and white. The left cockade was used to denote the province of the soldier (Prussia-black and white; Bavaria-white and blue; etc.).

All-metal versions of the Pickelhaube were worn mainly by cuirassiers, and often appear in portraits of high-ranking military and political figures (such as Otto von Bismarck, pictured above). These helmets were sometimes referred to as lobster-tail helmets, due to their distinctive articulated neck guard. The design of these is based on cavalry helmets in common use since the 16th century, but with some features taken from the leather helmets. The version worn by the Prussian Gardes du Corps was of tombac (copper and zinc alloy) with silver mountings. That worn by the cuirassiers of the line since 1842 was of polished steel with brass mountings,

53.4 Pickelhaube cover

In 1892, a light brown cloth helmet cover, the M1892 Überzug, became standard issue for all Pickelhauben for manoeuvres and active service. The Überzug was intended to protect the helmet from dirt and reduce its combat visibility, as the brass and silver fittings on the Pickelhaube proved to be highly reflective.[7] Regimental numbers were sewn or stenciled in red (green from August 1914) onto the front of the cover, other than in units of the Prussian Guards, which never carried regimental numbers or other adornments on the Überzug. With exposure to the sun, the Überzug faded into a tan shade. In October 1916 the colour was changed to be feldgrau (field grey), although by that date the plain metal Stahlhelm was standard issue for most troops.

53.5 Pickelhaube in World War I

All helmets produced for the infantry before and during 1914 were made of leather. As the war progressed, Germany's leather stockpiles dwindled. After extensive imports from South America, particularly Argentina, the German government began producing ersatz Pickelhauben made of other materials. In 1915, some Pickelhauben began to be made from thin sheet steel. However, the German high command needed to produce an even greater number of helmets, leading to the usage of pressurized felt and even paper to construct Pickelhauben.

During the early months of World War I, it was soon discovered that the Pickelhaube did not measure up to the demanding conditions of trench warfare. The leather helmets offered virtually no protection against shell fragments and shrapnel and the conspicuous spike made its wearer a target. These shortcomings, combined with material shortages, led to the introduction of the simplified model 1915 helmet described above, with a detachable spike. In September 1915 it was ordered that the new helmets were to be worn without spikes, when in the front line.[8]

Beginning in 1916, the Pickelhaube was slowly replaced by a new German steel helmet (the *Stahlhelm*) intended to offer greater head protection from shell fragments. The German steel helmet decreased German head wound fatalities by 70%. After the adoption of the Stahlhelm the Pickelhaube was reduced to limited ceremonial wear by senior officers away from the war zones; plus the *Leibgendarmerie S.M. des Kaisers* whose role as an Imperial/Royal escort led them to retain peacetime full dress throughout the war.[9][10] With the collapse of the German Empire in 1918, the Pickelhaube ceased to be part of the military uniform, and even the police adopted shakos of a Jäger style. In modified forms the new Stahlhelm helmet would continue to be worn by German troops into World War II.

53.6 Current use

The Pickelhaube is still part of the parade/ceremonial uniform of the Life Guards of Sweden, the National Republican Guard (GNR) of Portugal , the military academies of Chile, Colombia, Venezuela and Ecuador, the Military College of Bolivia, the Army Central Band and Army School Band of Chile (also since recently by the Chilean Army's 1st Cavalry and 1st Artillery Regiments), and the Presidential Guard Battalion and National Police of Colombia. Traffic police in the Hashemite Kingdom of Jordan also use a form of the Pickelhaube. The modern Romanian Gendarmerie (*Jandarmeria Româna*) maintain a mounted detachment who wear a white plumed Pickelhaube of a model dating from the late 19th century, as part of their ceremonial uniform.

53.7 Cultural icon

As early as in 1844, the poet Heinrich Heine mocked the Pickelhaube as a symbol of reaction and an unsuitable headdress. He cautioned that the spike could easily "draw modern lightnings down on your romantic head".[11] The poem

was part of his political satire on the contemporary monarchy, national chauvinism and militarism entitled *Germany; A Winter's Tale*.

In the lead-up to the 2006 FIFA World Cup in Germany, a moulded plastic version of the Pickelhaube was available as a fanware article. The common model was coloured in the black-red-gold of the current German flag, with a variety of other colours also available.

The spiked helmet remained part of a clichéd mental picture of Imperial Germany as late as the inter-war period even after the actual headdress had ceased to be worn This was possibly because of the extensive use of the pickelhaube in Allied propaganda during World War I, although the helmet had been a well known icon of Imperial Germany even prior to 1914. Pickelhauben were popular targets for Allied souvenir hunters during the early months of the war.

53.8 See also

- Budenovka
- Wilhelminism
- Pith helmet

53.9 References

[1] See "The American Pickelhaube" for examples of American military Pickelhaube.

[2] The German Pickelhaube, 1914-1916, *Trenches on the Web* web site

[3] With their helmets being called "The helmet of Yaroslav Mudry, which had a grenade on top, rather than a spike, and was much taller. Introduced in *c.*1820 and abolished after the Crimean War.Military Fashion by John Mollo (New York: G.P. Putnam's Sons, 1972), page 133 from excerpt cited on *What's the origin of the Pickelhaube spiked hat?* from the *Axis History Forum*

[4] The Model 1842 Pickelhaube from the *Kaiser's Bunker* web site

[5] Richard and Henry Knotel, "Uniforms of the World", ISBN 0-684-16304-7

[6] Major R.M. Barnes, page 257 "A History of the Regiments & Uniforms of the British Army, First Sphere Books 1972

[7] *First World War* - Willmott, H.P., Dorling Kindersley, 2003, Page 59

[8] *World War One German Army* -Stephen Bull, page 71-73

[9] Charles Woolley, page 368 *Uniforms and Equipment of the Imperial German Army 1900-1918*,ISBN 0-7643-0935-8

[10] Andrew Mollo, page 191 *Army Uniforms of World War I*, ISBN 0-668-04479-9

[11] Deutschland. Ein Wintermärchen. Caput III Deutschelyric.de, retrieved 15 June 2013

53.10 External links

- Colonel J's Pickelhaube Musings
- Evolution of the Pickelhaube
- Evolution of the Stahlhelm
- On-line guide to the different patterns of Imperial German Pickelhaube

Otto von Bismarck wearing a cuirassier officer's metal Pickelhaube.

Prussian infantry Pickelhaube in 1845 (at right).

Tsarist Russian Pickelhauben, with detachable plumes, mid 19th century

U.S. Marine Corps helmet of similar form, 1881-1902

Kaiser Wilhelm II, August von Mackensen and others wearing Pickelhauben with cloth covers in 1915

The Pickelhaube *was often used in propaganda against the Germans as in this World War I poster (Harry R. Hopps; 1917)*

Ceremonial nickel-plated Pickelhaube *of the modern Swedish Royal Life Guard Regiments.*

Colombian military band at Monument of Fallen Soldiers and Police in Bogota

Chapter 54

Sallet

The **sallet** (also called *celata, salade* and *schaller*) was a war helmet that replaced the bascinet in Italy, western and northern Europe and Hungary during the mid-15th century. In Italy, France and England the armet helmet was also popular, but in Germany the sallet became almost universal.

54.1 Origins

The origin of the sallet seems to have been in Italy where the term *celata* is first recorded in an inventory of the arms and armour of the Gonzaga family dated to 1407.[1] In essence the earliest sallets were a variant of the bascinet, intended to be worn without an aventail or visor. To increase protection to the face and neck, that the abandonment of the visor and aventail would have exposed, the sides of the helmet were drawn forward at the bottom to cover the cheeks and chin and the rear was curved out into a flange to protect the neck. The barbute or *barbuta* was a related helmet appearing in Italy at much the same time as the sallet. Unlike the sallet, the fully developed barbute consciously copied elements of the Classical Corinthian helmets of ancient times.[2]

54.2 Later developments and regional variation

The sallet became popular in France, England and the Netherlands through contact with Italy and eventually was adopted in Germany. Regional styles developed, which were catered for by the great armour manufacturing centres of northern Italy (especially Milan) and southern Germany (Augsburg and Nuremberg). However, though a sallet, or complete armour, might be German in style it could have been of Italian manufacture, or vice versa. The German sallet may have been the product of the melding of influences from the Italian sallet and the deep-skulled “German war-hat,” a type of brimmed *chapel de fer* helmet.[3]

Later Italian sallets (by c. 1460) lost their integral face protection and became open-faced helmets with gracefully curved surfaces. In this simple state they were favoured by lighter-armed troops, especially archers and crossbowmen, whose uninterrupted vision was at a premium. For more heavily armoured troops a greater level of protection could be afforded by the attachment of a plate re-inforce for the brow of the helmet and a deep visor, usually of the 'bellows' form which incorporated many ventilation slits. Such helmets would have been worn with a stiffened mail collar, termed a “standard,” which protected the throat and neck. Some Italian-style sallets were provided with a covering of rich cloth, usually velvet, which was edged in silver-gilt or gilded brass; ornamental decoration in the same metals could be added to the surface of the helmet, allowing areas of cloth to show through.[4]

In the period 1450-1460 a distinctive German style of sallet appeared. It was round-skulled but was less curvaceous than the Italian sallet, its most obvious feature was that the rear of the helmet was drawn out into a long tail, sometimes consisting of a number of lames. One characteristic that distinguishes early German sallets from later German sallets up to c.1495, is the length of the helmet tail, which became more pronounced over time. The front of these helmets sometimes extended down to cover the upper-face, with eye-slits provided for vision. Other versions retained the same outline, but the upper-face was protected by a movable half-visor. Most German sallets were worn with a separate scoop-shaped plate gorget, called a bevor, that extended from the upper chest to just below the nose and protected the wearer’s lower-face and throat. Most needed no added ventilation holes, as there was a natural gap where the visor

Typical light Italian celata *(sallet) of the later 15th century*

or front of the helmet overlapped the bevor near the wearer's mouth.[5]

By the mid 15th century a regional variety of sallet had evolved in England and the Netherlands, termed the 'English-Burgundian style' (the Netherlands were at that time ruled by the Duke of Burgundy). It was usually worn with a bevor and had very similar facial protection to, and frontal appearance as, the German sallet, but was more curvaceous and possessed a less extreme projection to the rear. In many ways it was intermediate between the German and Italian forms.[6] French sallets were very similar to the English-Burgundian type and all have been classed as "short-tailed

A late fifteenth-century German sallet, with bevor.

sallets."[7]

Sallet in the "English-Burgundian" style, in many ways intermediate between the Italian and German forms

54.3 Demise

In the last generations of German sallets the bevor was articulated from the same pivot as the visor. Initially the bevor was attached inside the skull.[8] When the long tail at the rear of the helmet was eventually shortened, from c. 1495, these later sallets became virtually indistinguishable from close helmets, and the articulation of the bevor moved to the outside of the skull.[9] The sallet was gradually abandoned for field use in the first two decades of the 16th century, being largely replaced by the close helm and burgonet, however, it was retained into the mid century, in a heavily reinforced form, for some types of jousting.[10]

The German-style sallet was the model for the World War I German *Stahlhelm*, whereas the kettle hat inspired the contemporary British and French helmets.[11] The sallet was the forerunner of the modern combat helmet and firefighter's helmet.

In Scottish heraldry, a representation of a sallet is still used today to display the crest of a company or organisation, as opposed to the conventional helmet used by individuals.

54.4 Gallery

- German Sallets
- Mid-15th-century Italian sallet for an archer
- Italian bellows visored sallet (transitional from sallet to close helm)

- Late German visored sallet (transitional to the close helm) the bevor and the brow-reinforce attach to the same pivot as the upper visor, and the tail at the rear of the helmet is much shorter than in earlier forms.

54.5 References

[1] Oakeshott, p. 109

[2] Oakeshott, pp. 109-110

[3] Grancsay, p. 21-22

[4] Oakeshott, pp. 113-114

[5] Oakeshott, pp. 111-113

[6] Oakeshott, p. 111

[7] Grancsay, p. 24

[8] Nickel, p. 16.

[9] Grancsay, p. 28

[10] Grancsay, pp. 28-29

[11] Bedford, p. 116

54.6 Bibliography

- Bedford, John (1968) *The Collecting Man*, D. McKay, New York.
- Bull, Stephen; North, Tony (ed.) (1991): *An Historical Guide To Arms & Armor*. Facts On File, New York. ISBN 0-8160-2620-3.
- Grancsay, Stephen V. (1950–51) *A Late Medieval Helmet (Sallet)*. The Journal of the Walters Art Gallery, Vol. 13/14 pp. 20–29 Published by: The Walters Art Museum Stable.
- Nickel, Helmut (1991) *Arms & Armors: From the Permanent Collection.* The Metropolitan Museum of Art Bulletin, New Series, Vol. 49, No. 1, (Summer, 1991), Published by The Metropolitan Museum of Art.
- Oakeshott, Ewart (1980) *European Weapons and Armour: From the Renaissance to the Industrial Revolution.* Lutterworth Press.

54.7 External links

Chapter 55

Secrete (helmet)

An example of a secrete

The **secrete** or **secret**, a French term adopted into English usage, was a type of helmet designed to be concealed beneath a hat.

55.1 Usage

In the 17th century, cavalrymen, especially fashion-conscious members of the gentry or aristocracy, who wished to wear fashionable broad-brimmed felt hats, but also retain some level of protection for the head, would employ a hidden helmet called a *secrete*. This type of helmet could also be worn by civilians, including some of the judges at Charles I's trial, who believed that their safety was threatened. The existence of a large number of *secrete* helmets of a very similar type all stored together in the Tower of London suggests that they were occasionally issued to troops as a uniform piece of military equipment.[1][2]

55.2 Appearance

The *secrete* was usually a small skull-cap of iron or steel pierced around its rim. The piercing allowed it to be sewn into the inside of a hat. The *secrete* was then undetectable to any observer, but offered considerably more protection

from edged weapons than could a felt hat alone. Many different designs were used, some had solid domes, others were ring-shaped with a scalloped lower edge, presumably to save weight. A few exceptional examples had a folding cage of bars, which could be drawn down to afford protection to the face when in action. A further type of head protection which could be considered to fall under the same category, as it was intended to deceive the observer and mimic civilian headgear, was an entire broad-brimmed hat made of iron or steel. Such hat-helmets were either covered in cloth, or blackened and given a dulled finish so as to resemble felt. King Charles I of England is recorded as possessing such a helmet.[3][4]

55.3 Notes

[1] Tincey, p. 46

[2] Bull, p. 118

[3] Bull, p. 118

[4] Tincey, p. 46

55.4 References

- Bull, S. (1991) *An Historical Guide to Arms and Armour,* Studio Editions, London, ISBN 1 85170 723 9
- Tincey, J. (McBride, A. - illustrator) (1990) *Soldiers of the English Civil War (2) Cavalry*, Osprey Publishing, ISBN 0-85045-940-0

55.5 External links

- English hat-helmet, with sliding nasal, 17th century

Chapter 56

Spangenhelm

The **Spangenhelm** was a popular medieval European combat helmet design of the Late Antiquity and Early Middle Ages.[1]

56.1 Construction

The name Spangenhelm is of German origin. *Spangen* refers to the metal strips that form the framework for the helmet and could be translated as *braces*, and *-helm* simply means helmet. The strips connect three to six steel or bronze plates. The frame takes a conical design that curves with the shape of the head and culminates in a point. The front of the helmet may include a nose protector (a nasal). Older spangenhelms often include cheek flaps made from metal or leather. Spangenhelms may incorporate mail as neck protection, thus forming a partial aventail. Some spangenhelms include eye protection in a shape that resembles modern eyeglass frames. Other spangenhelms include a full face mask.

The spangenhelm was an effective protection that was relatively easy to produce. Weakness of the design were its partial head protection and its jointed construction. It was replaced by similarly shaped helmets made with one-piece skulls (nasal helms), kettle hats and eventually the Great helm or casque.

56.2 History

The spangenhelm arrived in Western Europe by way of what is now southern Russia and Ukraine, spread by nomadic Iranian tribes such as the Scythians and Sarmatians who lived among the Eurasian steppes. By the 6th century it was the most common helmet design in Europe and in popular use throughout the Middle East. However, helmets of the spangenhelm type were used much longer. Some of the Nasal helmets depicted on the Bayeux Tapestry from the 11th century appear to be built as a Spangenhelm construction. The same is true for illustrations of the Morgan Bible from the 13th century.

56.3 Similar helmets

Similar but more simple helmets, the so-called Broadband helmets were used in parallel. These helmets may have been used until the 10th century, as depicted in the The Leiden Maccabees manuscript from the early 10th century. Related to the Spangenhelm were also Lamellar helmets or intermediate Lamellar-Spangen helmets, like the helmet from a 6th-century boys grave, found under the Cologne Cathedral.[2]

A similar construction principle is found the Northern ridge helmets, a group, which includes Scandinavian Vendel Era helmets and anglo-saxon helmets, like the Coppergate Helmet or the Pioneer Helmet.

A surviving Spangenhelm, 6th century (Kunsthistorisches Museum, Vienna)

Spangenhelm (iron), Migration Period - Museum of the Cetinska Krajina Region - Sinj, Croatia

56.4 Notes

Portions of this article were translated from the German Wikipedia.

[1] From the German Wikipedia, in heraldry a different kind of helmet is known as a spangenhelm. The latter helmet was a fifteenth and sixteenth tournament helmet style.

[2] Paul Mortimer: *Woden's Warriors: Warfare, Beliefs, Arms & Armour in Northern Europe During the 6-7th Centuries*. Anglo-Saxon Books, 2011. ISBN 978-1898281603

Sarmatian warriors with Spangenhelms, Trajans column (around 110 A.D.)

56.5 External links

- How to Build a Spangenhelm

Chapter 57

Helmet (heraldry)

In heraldic achievements, the **helmet** or **helm** is situated above the shield and bears the torse and crest. The style of helmet displayed varies according to rank and social status, and these styles developed over time, in step with the development of actual military helmets.[1][2] In some traditions, especially German and Nordic heraldry, two or three helmets (and sometimes more) may be used in a single achievement of arms, each representing a fief to which the bearer has a right. For this reason, the helmets and crests in German and Nordic arms are considered to be essential to the coat of arms and are never separated from it.

Open-visored or barred helmets are typically reserved to the highest ranks of nobility, while lesser nobility and burghers typically assume closed helms.[2] While these classifications remained relatively constant, the specific forms of all these helmets varied and evolved over time.[2] The evolution of these heraldic helmets followed the evolution of combat techniques and tourneying in the Middle Ages. The practice of indicating rank through the display of barred or open-face helmets did not appear until around 1615,[3] however, long after the practice of heraldry had been established. As jousting with lances was supplanted by tourneying with maces, the object being to knock the opponent's crest off his helmet, the fully enclosed helmet gave way to helmets with enlarged visual openings with only a few bars to protect the face. These barred helmets were restricted by the imperial chancellery in Vienna to the nobility and certain doctors of law or theology, while the jousting helm was freely adopted by anyone.[4] The direction a helmet faces and the number of bars on the grille have been ascribed special significance in later manuals, but this is not a period practice.[5] A king's helmet, a golden helmet shown affronté with the visor raised, crowned with a royal crown, became adopted by the kings of Prussia.[5] In ecclesiastical heraldry, bishops and other clergy use a mitre or other rank-appropriate ecclesiastical hat in place of a helmet.[6]

Historically, however, the helmet was not specifically granted in an achievement of arms, but was naturally assumed by appropriate rank as a matter of "inherent right", so a helmet with torse and mantling would not be misplaced even above a shield which had no crest to place above it.[7] When multiple crests need to be depicted, the time honoured practice in English heraldry is to draw the crests above a single helmet, each being separated from it, while in German heraldry, where multiple crests appear frequently after the 16th century, each crest is always treated as inseparable from its own helmet and turned in agreement with the helmet.[8] In continental Europe, multiple helmets were usually turned inward, with the center helm (if an odd number) turned affrontê, while in Scandinavian heraldry the helmets were usually turned outward.[9] The arms of the last margraves of Brandenburg-Ansbach consist of a shield with 21 quarterings topped with a record thirteen helmets and crests.[10]

The usage of heraldic helmets in Britain is as follows: Gold helmet with bars for the Royal Family; Silver helmet with gold bars for peers; Steel helmet with gold bars for the non-peerage Scottish feudal baron; Open steel helmet shown affronté for knights and baronets; Steel tournament helm for Scottish clan chiefs; Closed steel helmet for esquires and gentlemen.[11]

57.1 Gallery

- Open or barred helmet, reserved for members of the nobility
- Closed or tilting helm, used by medieval Knights, also adopted by English esquires and gentlemen, as well as on burgher arms
- Galero, used by bishops in place of a helmet

- The hat (and blank shield) of a priest's arms

57.2 Notes

[1] Woodcock (1988), p. 202.

[2] Fox-Davies (1909), p. 303.

[3] Fox-Davies (1909), p. 319.

[4] Neubecker (1976), pp. 148, 162.

[5] Neubecker (1976), p. 148.

[6] Woodcock (1988), p. 75.

[7] Fox-Davies (1909), p. 58.

[8] Fox-Davies (1909), pp. 322-323.

[9] Fox-Davies (1909), p. 323.

[10] Neubecker (1976), p. 165.

[11] Iain Moncrieffe and Don Pottinger (1953). *Simple Heraldry Cheerfully Illustrated*. Thomas Nelson and Sons. p. 58.

57.3 References

- Fox-Davies, Arthur Charles; Graham Johnston (1909, 2004). *A Complete Guide to Heraldry*. Kessinger Publishing. ISBN 1-4179-0630-8
- Neubecker, Ottfried (1976). *Heraldry: Sources, Symbols and Meaning*. Maidenhead, England: McGraw-Hill. ISBN 0-07-046308-5
- Woodcock, Thomas; John Martin Robinson (1988). *The Oxford Guide to Heraldry*. New York: Oxford University Press. ISBN 0-19-211658-4

57.4 External links

- Media related to Heraldic helmets at Wikimedia Commons

Chapter 58

Horned helmet

European Bronze Age and Iron Age **horned helmets** are known from a number of depictions, but few actual finds. Headpieces mounted with animal horns or replicas of them also occur, as in the Mesolithic Star Carr. These were probably used for religious ceremonial or ritual purposes.

58.1 Prehistoric Europe

Two bronze statuettes dated to the early 12th century BC, the so-called “horned god” and “ingot god”, depicting deities wearing horned helmets, found in Enkomi, Cyprus. In Sardinia dozens of warriors with horned helmets are depicted in bronze figures and in the monte prama gigantic statues, similar to those of the Shardana warriors (and possibly belonging to the same people) depicted by the Egyptians.

A pair of bronze horned helmets from the later Bronze Age (dating to ca. 1100–900 BC) were found near Veksø, Denmark in 1942.[1] Another early find is the Grevensvænge hoard from Zealand, Denmark (ca. 800–500 BC, now partially lost).

The Waterloo Helmet, a Celtic bronze ceremonial helmet with repoussé decoration in the La Tène style, dating to ca. 150–50 BC, was found in the River Thames, at London. Its abstracted 'horns', different from those of the earlier finds, are straight and conical.[2] Late Gaulish helmets (ca. 55 BC) with small horns and adorned with wheels, reminiscent of the combination of a horned helmet and a wheel on plate C of the Gundestrup cauldron (ca. 100 BC), were found in Orange, France.

58.2 Migration Period

Further information: Tierkrieger

Depicted on the Arch of Constantine, dedicated in 315 AD, are Germanic soldiers, sometimes identified as "Cornuti", shown wearing horned helmets. On the relief representing the Battle of Verona (312) they are in the first lines, and they are depicted fighting with the bowmen in the relief of the Battle of the Milvian Bridge.[3]

A depiction on a Migration Period (5th century) metal die from Öland, Sweden, shows a warrior with a helmet adorned with two snakes or dragons, arranged in a manner similar to horns. Decorative plates of the Sutton Hoo helmet (ca. 600 AD) depict spear-carrying dancing men wearing horned helmets.[4] A diebolt for striking plaques of this kind was found at Torslunda, Sweden.[5] An engraved belt-buckle found in a 7th-century grave at Finglesham, Kent in 1965 bears the image of a naked warrior standing between two spears wearing a belt and a horned helmet;[6] a case has been made[7] that the much-repaired chalk figure called the "Long Man of Wilmington", East Sussex, repeats this iconic motif, and originally wore a similar cap, of which only the drooping lines of the neckguard remain. This headgear, of which only depictions have survived, seems to have mostly fallen out of use with the end of the Migration period.

58.3 Middle Ages

During the High Middle Ages, fantastical headgear became popular among knights, in particular for tournaments.[8] The *achievements* or representations of some coats of arms, for example that of Lazar Hrebeljanovic, depict them, but they rarely appear as charges depicted within the arms themselves. It is sometimes argued that helmets with large protuberances would not have been worn in battle due to the impediment to their wearer. However, impractical adornments have been worn on battlefields throughout history.

58.4 In Asia

In pre-Meiji Restoration Japan, some Samurai armor incorporated a horned, plumed or crested helmet. These horns, used to identify military commanders on the battlefield, could be cast from metal, or made from genuine water buffalo horns.

Indo-Persian warriors often wore horned or spiked helmets in battle to intimidate their enemies. These conical "devil masks" were made from plated mail, and usually had eyes engraved on them.

58.5 Popular association with Vikings

Ceremonial use of horned helmets during the Germanic Iron Age persisted until the 7th century and can thus be argued to possibly have overlapped with the early Viking Age. However, there is no evidence that horned helmets were ever worn in battle at any point during the Viking Age.[9]

Nevertheless, popular culture came to associate horned helmets strongly with Viking warriors.[9] The popular association probably arose in 19th century Scandinavian Romanticism, possibly by misattribution of Bronze Age images such as the Grevensvænge figurines. More concrete evidence suggests those depictions were inspired by the work of Carl Emil Doepler, who in 1876 created horned helmets for use in the first Bayreuth Festival production of Wagner's *Der Ring des Nibelungen*.[9]

A 20th-century example of this association is the Minnesota Vikings football team, which as its logo carries a horn on each side of the helmet.

58.6 See also

- Winged helmet
- Horned God
- Golden hat
- Pointy hat

58.7 References

[1] Illustration from stenlose.bibnet.dk

[2] "Horned helmet". *Explore / highlights*. British Museum. Retrieved 2013-02-17.

[3] Speidel, Michael (2004). *Ancient Germanic warriors: warrior styles from Trajan's column to Icelandic sagas*. Routledge. p. 47. ISBN 0-415-31199-3.

[4] R. Bruce-Mitford, *The Sutton Hoo Ship-Burial: A Handbook* 2nd ed., London 1972, fig. 9 p. 30.

[5] H.R. Ellis Davidson, *Pagan Scandinavia* London 1967, pl. 41.

[6] S.C. Hawkes, H.R.E. Davidson, C. Hawkes, "The Finglesham man," *Antiquity* **39** 1965:17-32), pp 27-30.

[7] Jacqueline Simpson, "'Wændel' and the Long Man of Wilmington" *Folklore* **90**.1 (1979:25-28), noting that J.B. Sidgewick had related the Long Man to the Torslunda die in 1939, before Anglo-Saxon and Swedish connections had been fully demonstrated (Sidgewick, "The mystery of the Long Man", *Sussex County Magazine* **13** [1939:408-20]).

[8] See the depiction of Wolfram von Eschenbach and others in the Codex Manesse.

[9] "Did Vikings wear horned helmets?". *The Economist explains*. The Economist. February 15, 2013. Retrieved 2013-02-17. Unfortunately, few Viking helmets survive intact. The small sample size cannot prove the point definitively, but they are all horn-free....Where there were gaps in the historical record, artists often used their imagination to reinvent traditions. Painters began to show Vikings with horned helmets, evidently inspired by Wagner's costume designer, Professor Carl Emil Doepler, who created horned helmets for use in the first Bayreuth production of "Der Ring des Nibelungen" in 1876

58.8 External links

- Frank, Roberta (2000). "The Invention of the Viking Horned Helmet". *International Scandinavian and Medieval Studies in Memory of Gerd Wolfgang Weber*. Scribd.
- Did Vikings really wear horns on their helmets? from The Straight Dope

The bronze "Ingot God" from Enkomi, 12th century BC, Cyprus Archaeological Museum, Nicosia

Plate C of the Gundestrup cauldron, 2nd–1st century BC

The bronze "Horned God" from Enkomi

The Waterloo Helmet, ca. 150–50 BC, found in the Thames (British Museum)

The German Hyghalmen Roll*, ca. late 15th century, illustrates a horned helm in the arms of Dalheim, bottom row*

Japanese kabuto with buffalo horns.

Indo-Persian Devil Mask, cuirass and scimitar

Minnesota Viking Pat Williams at the 2007 Pro Bowl.

Chapter 59

Mahiole

Hawaiian feather helmets, known as ***mahiole*** in the Hawaiian language,[2] were worn with feather cloaks (ʻahu ʻula). These were symbols of the highest rank reserved for the men of the *aliʻi*,[3] the chiefly class of Hawaii. There are examples of this traditional headgear in museums around the world. At least sixteen of these helmets were collected during the voyages of Captain Cook.[4] These helmets are made from a woven frame structure decorated with bird feathers and are examples of fine featherwork techniques. One of these helmets was included in a painting of Cook's death by Johann Zoffany.

59.1 Appearance

While the Hawaiians did not wear hats, during times of combat the Ali'i chiefs would wear specially created wicker helmets that have been likened to the classic Greek helmets, and also co-incidentally bear a resemblance to the headdress worn by Ladakh Buddhist religious musicians. While the question has been posed if the influence is from the Spanish, the tradition comes from the northern coast of New Ireland.[5] The design for mahiole is a basketry frame cap with a central crest running from the centre of the forehead to the nape of the neck. However the variation in the design is considerable with the colour and arrangement of the feather patterns differing and the crest varying in height and thickness. A number of museums have numerous examples in different designs and stages of preservation. A related Hawaiian term *Oki Mahiole* means a haircut where a strip of hair is left on the head.[2] The image of the Hawaiian god Kū-ka-ili-moku is sometimes presented with a similar shaped head.[6]

59.2 Construction

The helmets are constructed on a basket type construction which gives a light and strong frame. The frame is decorated usually with feathers obtained from local birds although there have been variations which have used human hair instead.[7] The plant used to make the baskets is *Freycinetia arborea*, a plant often used to make basketware.[8] In addition to *Freycinetia arborea* the makers also used fibre from the *Touchardia latifolia* plant[9] which is a type of nettle. *Touchardia latifolia* was used to create string or thread to tie the feathers to the basketry.

The colouring was achieved using different types of feathers. The black and yellow came from a bird called the *Moho* or *ʻOʻo* in Hawaiian. There were four varieties of this bird. The last type became extinct in 1987 with the probable cause being disease. Black feathers were also sourced from the bird called the *Mamo* which is also now extinct. The distinctive red feathers came from *Vestiaria coccinea* - the Scarlet Hawaiian Honeycreeper or *ʻIʻiwi* and the species *Himatione sanguinea* also known as the *ʻapapane*. Both species are still moderately common birds in Hawaii. Although birds were exploited for their feathers the effect on the population is thought to be minimal.[10] The birds were not killed but were caught by specialist bird catchers, a few feathers harvested and then the birds were released.[11]

Tens of thousands of feathers were required for each mahiole. A small bundle of feathers was gathered and tied before being tied into the framework. Bundles were tied in close proximity to form a uniform covering of the surface of the mahiole.[12]

The Scarlet Hawaiian Honeycreeper *or* ʻIʻiwi.

59.3 Captain James Cook's Mahiole

When Captain James Cook visited Hawaii on 26 January 1778 he was received by a high chief called Kalaniʻōpuʻu. At the end of the meeting Kalaniʻōpuʻu placed the feathered helmet and cloak he had been wearing on Cook. Kalaniʻōpuʻu also laid several other cloaks at Cook's feet as well as four large pigs and other offerings of food. Much of the material from Cook's voyages including the helmet and cloak ended up in the collection of Sir Ashton Lever. He exhibited them in his museum, initially called the Holophusikon and later the Leverian Museum.[4] It was while at this museum that Cook's mahiole and cloak were borrowed by Johann Zoffany in the 1790s and included in his painting of the Death of Cook.[4]

Lever went bankrupt and his collection was disposed of by public lottery. The collection was obtained by James Parkinson who continued to exhibit it. He eventually sold the collection in 1806 in 8,000 separate sales. (The British Museum failed to bid on these items as Sir Joseph Banks had advised them that there was nothing of value.).[4] The mahiole and cloak were purchased by the collector William Bullock who exhibited them in his own museum until 1819 when he also sold his collection. The mahiole and cloak were purchased by Charles Winn and they remained in his family until 1912, when Charles Winn's grandson, the Second Baron St Oswald, gave them to the Dominion of New Zealand. They are now in the collection of the Museum of New Zealand Te Papa Tongarewa.

59.4 Mahiole in Museums

59.4.1 Bernice P. Bishop Museum, Honolulu

The Bernice P. Bishop Museum in Honolulu has a 200 year old mahiole and matching cloak. This bright red and yellow mahiole was given to the king of Kauaʻi, Kaumualiʻi, when he became a vassal to Kamehameha I in 1810, uniting all the islands into the Kingdom of Hawaii.[13]

The 200 year old Mahiole and feathered cape.

59.4.2 British Museum, London

The British Museum has seven of these helmets.[7][9][14] The large red one pictured was obtained from the collection of Sir Joseph Banks. Banks was a rich polymath who was particularly interested in botany. He sailed with Captain Cook on his first journey of exploration and continued to keep in contact with Cook's further explorations. It is speculated that this helmet may have belonged to Cook's second in command, Charles Clerke.[14] Clerke's collections were left to Joseph Banks following Clerke's death on Cook's third voyage. At the time of his death Clerke was

captain of the vessel following Cook's death.

The red British Museum helmet.

A second helmet differs in overall design to the first in that it has concentric bands of yellow and black against an overall red background. A hat of this design was recorded by John Webber who was Captain Cook's official artist.[9] The British Museum also holds an example without feathers which shows how the framework was constructed.[15]

59.4.3 Museum of Ethnology, Vienna

The Museum of Ethnology in Vienna obtained some of its oldest exhibits from the Leverian Museum museum sale of 1806.[16] Baron Leopold von Fichtel purchased a number of items for his museum in Vienna.[17]

59.4.4 Museum of New Zealand Te Papa Tongarewa, Wellington

The Museum of New Zealand Te Papa Tongarewa has four mahiole in its collection. Two were gifts of Lord St Oswald in 1912.[18] The other two were purchased in 1948 by the New Zealand Government from William Ockelford Oldman, a collector and dealer in ethnographic antiquities.[19] The British Museum, The Smithsonian and the Museum of New Zealand Te Papa Tongarewa believe that one of the helmets and its matching cloak were those placed on Cook by the Hawaiian chief Kalani'ōpu'u.[14][18][20] The particular helmet and cloak in question are similar to those depicted in Zoffany's painting.

59.5 History of the World in 100 Objects

The feathered helmet from the British Museum was chosen to be one of the items featured in the radio series *A History of the World in 100 Objects*. The series started in 2010 and was created in a partnership between the BBC and the British Museum.[21]

59.6 Tales From Te Papa

Cook's mahiole and cloak are featured in the mini-documentary television series *Tales from Te Papa* filmed in 2009. The series was created in a partnership between TVNZ and Te Papa[11]

59.7 References

[1] Spoked Feathered Helmet, British Museum, accessed September 2010

[2] Mary Kawena Pukui and Samuel Hoyt Elbert (2003). "lookup of *mahiole*". in *Hawaiian Dictionary*. Ulukau, the Hawaiian Electronic Library, University of Hawaii Press.

[3] Mary Kawena Pukui and Samuel Hoyt Elbert (2003). "lookup of *ali'i* ". in *Hawaiian Dictionary*. Ulukau, the Hawaiian Electronic Library, University of Hawaii Press.

[4] To attempt some new discoveries in that vast unknown tract, Adrienne Kaeppler, Smithsonian Museum of Natural History, Washington DC Cook's Pacific Encounters symposium, National Museum of Australia, 28 July 2006

[5] William Alanson Bryan (1899). *A Key to the Birds of the Hawaiian Group*. H. I., Bishop museum Press. p. 40.

[6] "`aumakua hulu manu Kuka`ilimoku (feathered image)". *Collections Online*. Museum of New Zealand Te Papa Tongarewa. Retrieved 28 November 2010.

[7] Feathered helmet (mahiole), British Museum, accessed 26 August 2010

[8] "ieie, ie". *Hawaiian Ethnobotany Online Database*. Bernice P. Bishop Museum. Retrieved 2010-08-26.

[9] Feathered helmet (mahiole), British Museum, accessed August 2010

[10] "Kaua'i 'Ō'ō" (PDF). *Hawaii's Comprehensive Wildlife Conservation Strategy*. State of Hawai'i. 2005-10-01. Retrieved 2010-09-22.

[11] "A Captain's Chiefly Gift - Tales from Te Papa episode 52". Museum of New Zealand Te Papa Tongarewa. Retrieved 16 November 2010.

[12] Arcayna, Nancy (12 September 2008). "Cloaked in native culture: Kaha'i Topolinski preserves the art of Hawaiian feather work". *Honolulu Star Bulletin*. Retrieved 20 November 2010.

[13] "Bishop Museum Loans Rare Artifacts to Kauai'i". Bishop Museum, Honolul u. 19 October 2006. Retrieved 21 September 2010.

[14] Hawaiian feather helmet, Highlights, British Museum, accessed 9 August 2010

[15] Mahiole, British Museum, accessed 27 November 2010

[16] "History". *Kunsthistorisches Museum*. Retrieved 21 September 2010.

[17] The Ibis, Series 3, Volume 3, Osbert Salvin, 1873, accessed 29 August 2010

[18] "Mahiole". Museum of New Zealand Te Papa Tongarewa. Retrieved 4 October 2010.

[19] "Object: mahiole". Museum of New Zealand Te Papa Tongarewa. Retrieved 28 November 2010.

[20] "Object: `ahu `ula (Feathered cloak)". Museum of New Zealand Te Papa Tongarewa. Retrieved 4 October 2010.

[21] "Hawaiian feather helmet". *A History of the World in 100 Objects*. BBC. Retrieved 21 September 2010.

59.8 External links

- Mahiole Collection of the British Museum
- Mahiole Collection of the Museum of New Zealand Te Papa Tongarewa

Chapter 60

Tarnhelm

Tarnhelm is a magic helmet in Richard Wagner's *Der Ring des Nibelungen* (1848-1874). It was crafted by Mime at the demand of his brother Alberich. It is used as a cloak of invisibility by Alberich in *Das Rheingold* (1869). It also allows one to change one's form:

- Alberich changes to a dragon and then a toad in *Das Rheingold*, Scene 3
- Fafner changes to a dragon at the end of *Das Rheingold* and appears thus in Siegfried Act II. (It is never made clear whether Fafner actually used the Tarnhelm to transform, or simply transformed as many giants and gods did in the myths. There is also no Tarnhelm present in the original Andvari myth from Reginsmál in the Poetic Edda from which Wagner drew inspiration for this scene.)
- Siegfried changes to Gunther's form in *Götterdämmerung* Act I, Scene 3.

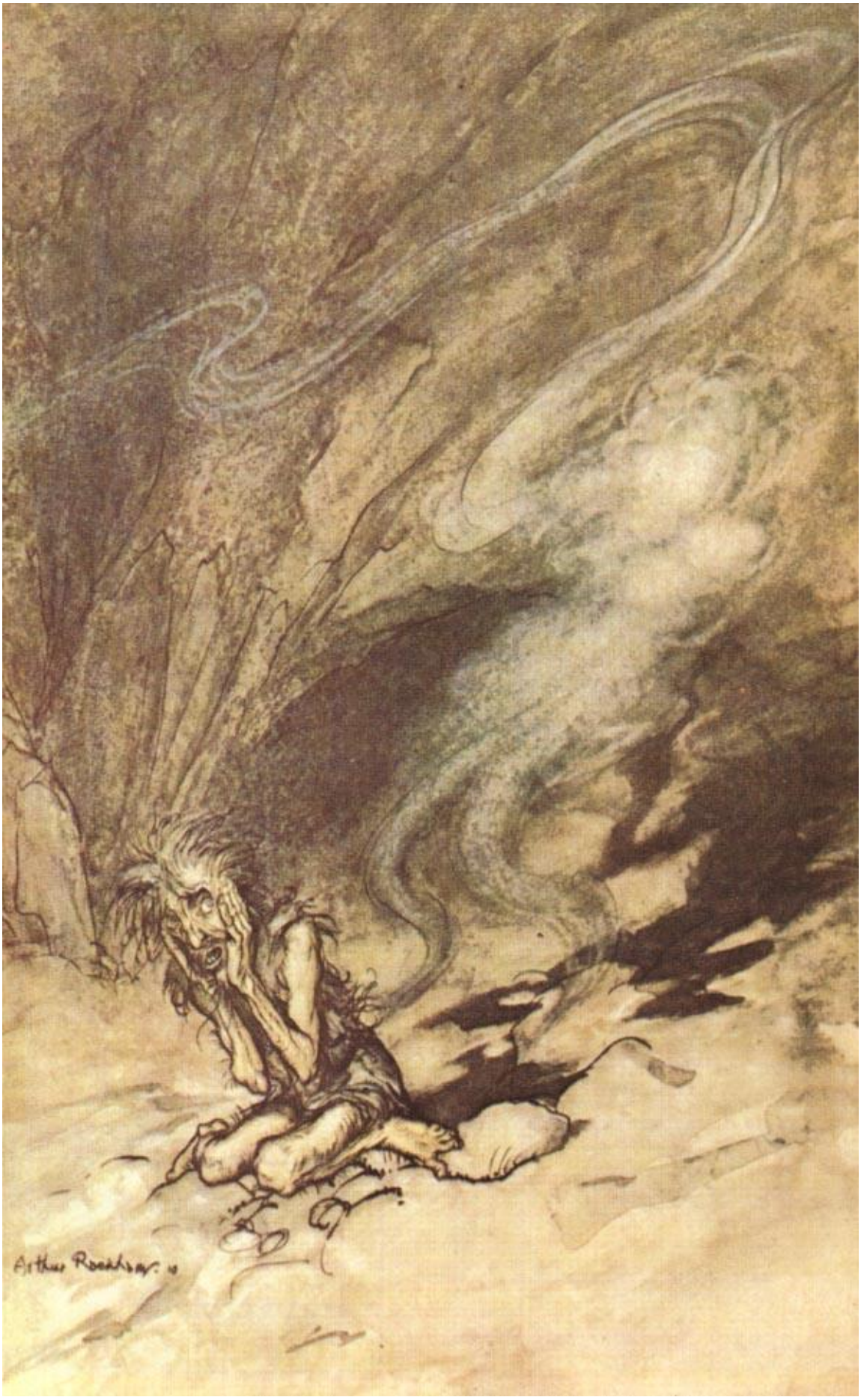
Finally, it allows one to travel long distances instantly, as Siegfried does in *Götterdämmerung* Act II, Scene 2.

60.1 In popular culture

- It is also an item found in the game *Diablo 2*.
- In Thor (Marvel Comics) an adaption was done of the Ring Cycle, in which the Tarnhelm appeared.
- The 1957 Warner Bros. cartoon *What's Opera, Doc?*, a comedy on opera in general and Wagner's Ring Cycle in particular, has Elmer Fudd wearing a magic helmet that is meant to suggest Tarnhelm.
- It is the name of the expansion pack for PC strategy game Naval War : Arctic Circle which features new stealth units, which are supposedly invisible to RADAR.
- The main character in Brenda Clough's novel *How Like a God* can psionically obstruct other people from seeing him, a process he refers to as "tarnhelm".
- The Dungeons & Dragons game includes the magic item *helm of teleportation* (Gygax & Arneson, 1974 D&D Vol-2, p. 37), similar to Siegfried's use of the Tarnhelm in Act II, Scene 2.

60.2 See also

- Huliðshjálmr (concealing helmet) of Norse dwarves
- Fafnir's helmet Aegis



Alberich puts on the Tarnhelm and vanishes; illustration by Arthur Rackham to Richard Wagner's Das Rheingold

Chapter 61

Pith helmet

The **pith helmet** (also known as the **safari helmet**, **sun helmet**, **topee**, **sola topee**, **salacot** or **topi**[lower-alpha 1]) is a lightweight cloth-covered helmet made of cork or pith, typically pith from the sola, *Aeschynomene aspera*, an Indian swamp plant, or *A. paludosa*, or a similar plant.[1] Designed to shade the wearer's head and face from the sun, pith helmets were often worn by people of European origin in the tropics, but have also been used in other contexts.

61.1 Origins

Crude forms of pith helmets had existed as early as the 1840s, but it was around 1870 that the pith helmet became popular with military personnel in Europe's tropical colonies. The Franco-Prussian War had popularized the German *Pickelhaube*, which may have influenced the distinctive design of the pith helmet. Such developments may have merged with a traditional design from the Philippines, the salakot. The alternative name *salacot* (also written *salakhoff*) appears frequently in Spanish and French sources; it comes from the Tagalog word *salacsac* (or Salaksak). During the Revolution in the Philippine-American War, Emilio Aguinaldo and the Philippine revolutionary military used to wear the pith helmet borrowed from the Spaniards alongside the straw hat and the native *salakot*.

Originally made of pith with small peaks or "bills" at the front and back, the helmet was covered by white cloth, often with a cloth band (or *puggaree*) around it, and small holes for ventilation. Military versions often had metal insignia on the front and could be decorated with a brass spike or ball-shaped finial. The chinstrap could be in leather or brass chain, depending on the occasion. The base material later became the more durable cork, although still covered with cloth and frequently still referred to as "pith" helmet.

61.2 Colonial period: the Foreign Service helmet

The earliest appearance of sun helmets made of pith occurred in India during the Anglo-Sikh wars of the 1840s. Adopted more widely during the Indian Mutiny of 1857–59, they were generally worn by British troops serving in the Ashanti War of 1873, the Zulu War of 1878–79 and subsequent campaigns in India, Burma, Egypt and South Africa.[2] This distinctively shaped headwear came to be known as the Foreign Service helmet.

During the Anglo-Zulu War, British troops dyed their white pith helmets with tea, mud or other makeshift means of camouflage.[3] Subsequently khaki-coloured pith helmets became standard issue for active tropical service.

While this form of headgear is particularly associated with both the British and the French empires, all European colonial powers used versions of it during the late 19th and early 20th centuries. The French tropical helmet was first authorised for white colonial troops in 1878.[4] The Dutch wore the helmet during the entire Aceh War (1873–1914) and the United States Army adopted it during the 1880s for use by soldiers serving in the intensely sunny climate of the Southwest United States.[5] It was also worn by the North-West Mounted Police in policing North-West Canada, 1873 through 1874 to the North-West Rebellion and even before the Stetson in the Yukon Gold Rush of 1898.

European officers commanding locally recruited indigenous troops, as well as civilian officials in African and Asian colonial territories, used the pith helmet. White troops serving in the tropics usually wore pith helmets; although on active service they sometimes used such alternatives as the wide-brimmed slouch hats, which were worn by US troops in the Philippines and by British Empire forces in the later stages of the Boer War.

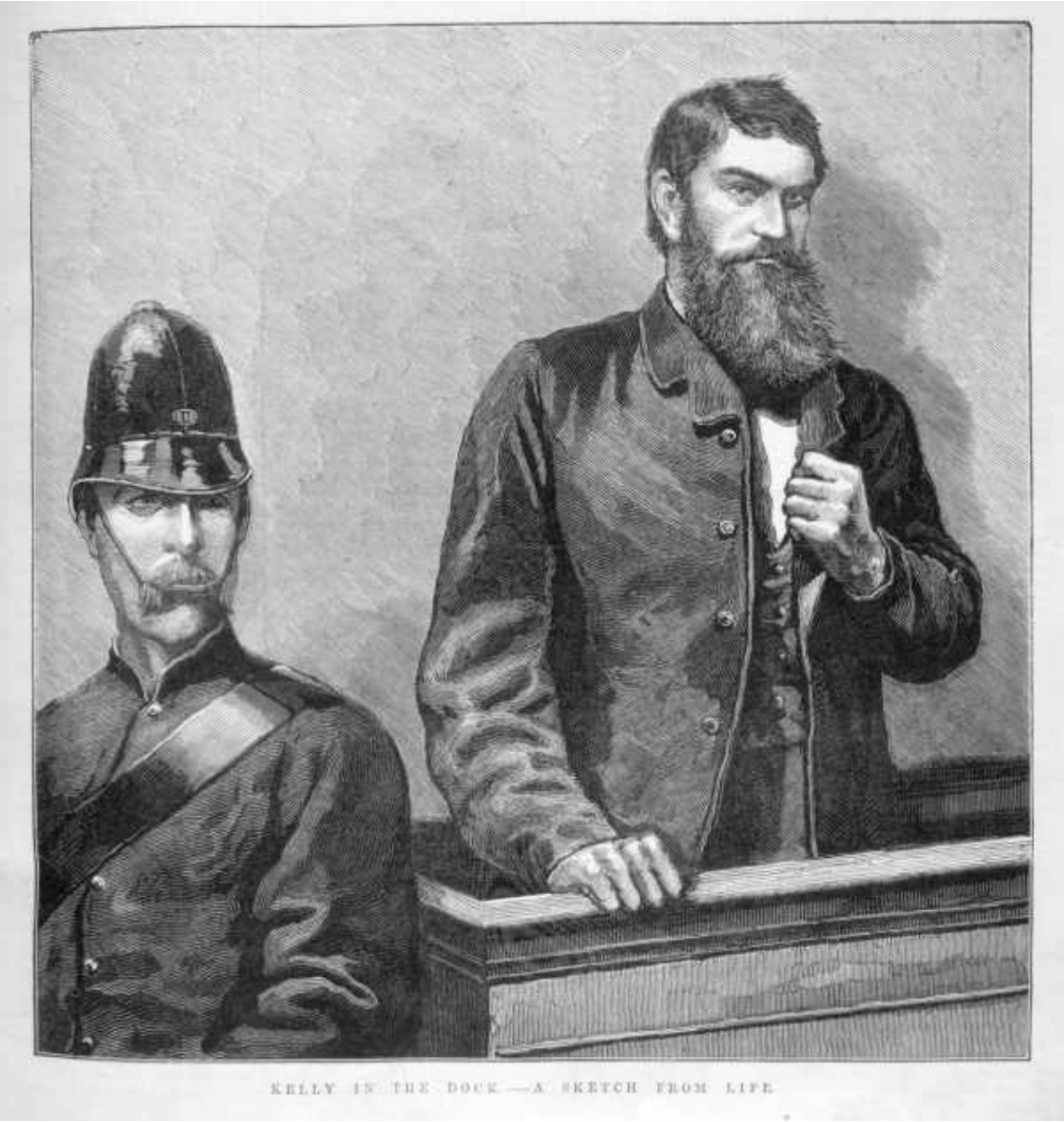
At the aerodrome in Amman, Jordan, Col. T. E. Lawrence ("Lawrence of Arabia", 2nd from left) and Sir Herbert Samuel (centre) wearing a pith helmet, April 1921

61.3 Home Service helmet

At the same time, the military adopted a broadly similar helmet, of dark blue cloth over cork and incorporating a bronze spike, for wear in non-tropical areas. This helmet led to the retirement of the shako headdress. While not considered a true "pith helmet" this headdress did resemble its tropical counterpart and during the 1890s a white version

British journalist and explorer Sir Henry Morton Stanley, wearing a pith helmet with a white puggaree *in 1872.*

which could be worn in both the United Kingdom and India was experimentally issued to some British regiments.[6] Modeled on the German *Pickelhaube*, the British Army adopted this headgear (which they called the "Home Service Helmet") in 1878. Most British line infantry, artillery (with ball rather than spike) and engineers wore the helmet until 1902, when khaki Service Dress was introduced. With the general adoption of khaki for field dress in 1903, the helmet became purely a full dress item, being worn as such until 1914.[7]



Australian policeman (left) wearing pith helmet at the trial of Ned Kelly.

The Home Service Helmet is still worn by some British Army bands or Corps of Drums on ceremonial occasions today. It is closely related to the custodian helmet worn by a number of police forces in England and Wales.

The US Army wore blue cloth helmets of the same pattern as the British model from 1881 to 1901 as part of their full dress uniform. The version worn by cavalry and mounted artillery included plumes and cords in the colors (yellow or red) of their respective branches of service.

Black helmets of a similar shape were also part of the uniform of the Victoria Police during the late 19th century. It may have been worn by some of the police involved in the shootout with the legendary bushranger Ned Kelly at Glenrowan, although contemporary sketches show kepis being worn.

61.4 20th century

Pith helmets were widely worn during World War I by British, Belgian, French and German colonial troops fighting in the Middle East and Africa.

Helmets of this style (but without true pith construction) were used as late as World War II by Japanese, European

British troops wearing pith helmets in Iraq, 11 June 1941

and American military personnel in hot climates. Included in this category are the sun helmets worn in Ethiopia by Italian troops,[8] the Royal Netherlands East Indies Army, Union Defence Force, and Germany's Afrika Korps, as well as similar helmets used to a more limited extent by U.S. and Japanese[9] forces in the Pacific Theater.

During the 1930s the locally recruited forces maintained in the Philippines, (consisting of the army and a gendarmerie), used sun helmets. The Axis Second Philippine Republic's military, known as the Bureau of Constabulary, as well as guerrilla groups in the Philippines also wore this headdress.

The Ethiopian Imperial Guard retained pith helmets as a distinctive part of their uniform until the overthrow of Emperor Haile Selassie I in 1974. Imperial Guard units serving in the Korean War often wore these helmets when not in actual combat.

The British Army formally abolished the tropical helmet in 1948.

61.4.1 Naval use

While not usually perceived as a headdress suitable for sea wear, a white tropical helmet was issued to personnel of the French Navy serving in the Red Sea, Far Eastern waters and the Pacific between 1922 and the 1940s.[10] Prior to World War I the British and other navies had sometimes provided pith helmets for landing parties in tropical regions.

German Tropenhelm, *ca. 1910*

Pith helmets abandoned by retreating Italian forces during the North African campaign.

61.4.2 Wolseley pattern

See also: Uniforms of the Canadian Forces § Full dress and patrol dress

The Wolseley pattern helmet is a distinctive British design developed and popularized in the late 19th and early 20th century. It was the official designation for the universal sun helmet worn by the British Army from 1899 to 1948 and described in the 1900 Dress Regulations as “the Wolseley pattern cork helmet”. With its swept-back brim it provided greater protection from the sun than the old Foreign Service helmet, and its use was soon widespread among British personnel serving overseas. In the early 20th century the Canadian Militia adopted it as full-dress headgear for infantry of the line, and several armour and infantry regiments maintain its use.

Through the first half of the twentieth century, the Wolseley pattern helmet was worn with civil uniform by British colonial, diplomatic and consular officials serving in 'hot climates'. It was worn with a gilt badge of the royal arms at the front. When worn by Governors and Governors-general the helmet was topped by a 10-inch red and white swan-feather plume.[11] British diplomats in tropical postings, Governors-General, Governors and colonial officials continued to wear the traditional white helmets as part of their ceremonial white uniforms until Foreign and Commonwealth Office officials ceased to wear such dress during the late 20th century for reasons of economy. The ceremonies marking the end of British rule in Hong Kong in 1997 featured the Royal Hong Kong Police aide-de-camp to the Governor in a white Wolseley pith helmet with blue feathers, and was probably the last occasion on which this style of headdress appeared as a symbol of Empire.

Prior to World War II, Royal Navy officers wore the Wolseley helmet when in white (tropical) uniform; the helmet was plain white, with a narrow navy-blue edging to the top of the puggaree.

In the army a khaki version was frequently worn, ornamented with a regimental cap badge. The full-dress white helmet varied further from regiment to regiment: it was topped with a spike (for infantry and cavalry regiments, for the Army Ordnance Corps and the Royal Engineers) or a ball (for Artillery and other corps), and some regiments had distinctive puggarees. General officers and staff officers in full dress wore plumes similar to those worn on their full-dress cocked hats.[12]

Sir Reginald Wingate posing with Wolseley style helmet circa 1899.

61.5 Civilian use

See also: Bombay Bowler

Such was the popularity of the pith helmet that it became a common civilian headgear for Westerners in the tropics and sub-tropics from the mid-19th century. The civilian pith helmet usually had the same dimensions and outline as its contemporary military counterpart though it lacked decorative extras such as badges. It was worn by men and

women, old and young, both on formal and casual occasions, until the 1940s.[13] Both white and khaki versions were used. It was often worn together with civilian versions of khaki drill and/or bush jackets.

Until the 1950s there was a widespread assumption that wearing this form of head-dress was necessary for people of European origin to avoid sunstroke in the tropics. By contrast, indigenous peoples were assumed to have acquired a relative immunity.[14] Modern medical opinion holds that some form of wide brimmed but light headwear (such as a Panama hat etc.) is highly advisable in strong sunlight for people of all races to avoid skin cancers and overheating.

61.6 Modern survivals

Royal Marines on parade in 1972

61.6.1 Commonwealth

The Royal Marines still wear white “Wolseley pattern” helmets of the same general design as the old pith helmet as part of their number 1 or dress uniform. These date from 1912 in their present form and are made of natural cork covered in white cloth on the outside and shade green on the inside. Decoration includes a brass ball ornament at the top, helmet plate and chin chain. A similar headdress is worn by the Tongan Royal Guard.

Australian military bands, such as the Army Band and that of the Royal Military College Duntroon, still wear the white pith helmet as do the New South Wales Mounted Police. The Royal Gibraltar Regiment wear the white pith helmet with a white tunic (in summer) and red tunic (in winter).

The white Wolseley helmet (still with red and white swan-feather feather plume) may still occasionally be worn by Governors of British Overseas Territories when in uniform.[15] Since 2001 such dress has been provided only at the expense of the territory concerned and is no longer paid for by the Foreign and Commonwealth Office.[16]

The pith helmet continues to be worn by cadets in senior positions at the Royal Military College of Canada for certain parades and special occasions. Notably, the Cadet Wing Commander, Deputy Wing Commander, Wing Training Officer, Wing Administration Officer, Squadron Leaders, Squadron Training Officers, and the Colour Party. The same pattern of helmet forms part of the ceremonial dress uniform of the Royal Canadian Regiment and Princess Patricia’s Canadian Light Infantry, with distinctively coloured (red and French grey respectively) puggarees.

61.6.2 United States

The U.S. Navy authorized a plastic khaki sun helmet for wear by officers in tropical regions during the mid-20th Century. It was decorated with a full-size officer's hat crest on the front. The U.S. Marine Corps pith helmet has also seen use as a form of identification by rifle range coaches, similarly the campaign hat is worn by rifle range instructors as well as drill instructors.[17] White (in some places light blue) sun helmets of plastic material but traditional design are still worn today by some mail carriers of the U.S. Postal Service, when delivering the mail on foot in hot climates - such as Puerto Rico, South Carolina, Florida, Southern California, Arizona, and Hawaii - or during rainy weather.

A pith helmet with a feather plume is part of the uniform of the Phantom Regiment Drum and Bugle Corps, from Rockford, Illinois.

61.6.3 The Netherlands

A black pith helmet similar to the British Home Service helmet is worn with the ceremonial uniforms of the Garderegiment Fuseliers Prinses Irene and the Netherlands Marine Corps.[18]

61.6.4 Vietnam

After World War II, the communist Viet Minh and later the People's Army of Vietnam of the North based their helmet design on the French pith helmet of the former colonial power and adopted it as their own. Today it is still widely worn by civilians in Vietnam (mostly in the North, but its use has seen a sharp decline since 2007, when the motorbike helmet became mandatory for motorbike riders). This style of headdress now appears only rarely as part of military and police uniforms. In design, the Vietnamese model was similar to the pre–World War II civilian type, but covered in jungle green cloth, sometimes with a metal insignia at the front.

61.6.5 Other nations

The Compagnie des Carabiniers du Prince of Monaco and by the Sri Lankan Police as part of their dress uniform. In the Philippines, some ceremonial units use sun helmets, as do the Royal Guards of the Royal Thai Army.

Pith helmets with black pugarees were the standard duty headgear used by highway traffic officers in the Dominican Republic's National Police up until the beginning of the 21st century, when these units were replaced by the creation of the *Autoridad Metropolitana de Transporte* (AMET) corps, who were issued dark green Stetson hats instead.

White Wolseley helmets are worn by mounted presidential guard members in Harare, Zimbabwe, during the opening of every first parliamentary session.[19]

A khaki or white pith helmet is part of the standard summer uniform of traffic officers in certain police departments in India.

Modern Italian municipal police wear a helmet modeled on the Model 1928 tropical helmet of the Royal Italian Army for foot patrols in summer. These are made from white plastic with cork or pith interior lining and resemble the British Custodian helmet, though taller and narrower.

61.6.6 Modern commercial models

The pith helmet has had a limited comeback in recent years, with their now novel appearance and genuine functionality making the headdress increasingly popular for gardening, hiking, safari and other outdoor activities. Today's helmets are generally available in four basic types (see below). These have changed little since the early 1900`s, except that for easier adjustment the inner headband utilises velcro instead of the earlier brass pins.

(i) **French pith helmet**. This is the most functional of the helmets, with its wide brim providing more sun protection than the more narrow-brimmed variations. This helmet is mostly made in Vietnam, where the design was inherited from French colonial patterns. Like other civilian pith helmets it can be soaked in water to keep the wearer's head cool in hot weather. Another feature in common with other patterns is the adjustable chinstrap at the front of the helmet.

(ii) **Indian pith helmet**. The Indian model is almost exactly the same as the French one, but with a slightly narrower brim and a squarer dome. It shares with other helmets the ventilation "button" atop the dome.

(iii) **African pith helmet**,or **safari helmet**, is a variation mainly used in savanna or jungle regions of Africa. It is generally a khaki-grey colour, with the same dimensions and shape as the Indian helmet described above.

(iv) **Wolseley pith helmet**. This variation of the helmet was named after (but not designed by) Sir Garnet Wolseley[20] and widely used by the British Army and Colonial civil service from 1900. The Wolseley helmet differs from other pith helmets in having a more sloping brim with an apex at the front and back. The dome is also taller and more conical than the other more rounded variations. It is the helmet often portrayed as being worn by stereotypical "Gentleman Explorers".

61.7 Gallery

- Pith helmet of the Second French Empire, spiked helmet in pickelhaube style, marked with the name of Ranavalona III (1869–1917), the last queen of Madagascar
- Home Service helmet with the capstan of the Royal Electrical and Mechanical Engineers. Not a pith helmet but with similar shape.
- Pith helmet of Harry S. Truman
- German Pith Helmet from the Second World War
- A khaki-coloured Indian-made shola-style pith helmet (*shola topee*) from the post-WW-II era, made from pressed sholapith and used both by government employees as well as civilians in South Asia and the Middle East until after World War II
- French Navy pith helmet of the early 20th century
- An NVA pith helmet worn during the Vietnam War

61.8 See also

- Sholapith
- Custodian helmet
- Merryweather

61.9 Notes

[1] The terms **solar topee** and **solar topi** are examples of folk etymology elaborations of the sola plant and are not etymologically related to "sun" or "solar"

61.10 References

[1] "AskOxford:pith helmet". Retrieved December 3, 2009.

[2] Barnes, R.M. *Military Uniforms of Britain and the Empire*, First Sphere Books 1972

[3] Barthorp. Michael. *The Zulu War* ISBN 0-7137-1469-7 p. 21

[4] Lavuzelle, Charles. *Les Troupes de Marine 1622–1984*, ISBN 978-2-7025-0142-9 p.103

[5] "Military collection of Peter Suciu". Archived from the original on June 5, 2008. Retrieved December 3, 2009. website archive

[6] Walton, P.S. *Simkin's Soldiers - the British Army in 1890*, ISBN 0 948251 02 6

[7] Haswell Miller, A.E. *Vanished Armies*, ISBN 978 0 74780-739-1

[8]

[9] Quanonline.com

[10] Page 346 *Militaria Magazine* Avril 2014

[11] 'Dress worn at Court', Lord Chamberlain's Office, first published 1898.

[12] Bates, S. *The Wolseley Helmet in Pictures: From Omdurman to El Alamein*.

[13] Gunther, John. *Inside Africa*, Hamish Hamilton Ltd 1955, p.708

[14] 1911 Edition, Encyclopaedia Britannica

[15] "New Governor : 'Challenges are crime and the economy'". The Royal Gazette. 2012-05-23. Retrieved 2014-04-26.

[16] La Guardia, Anton (8 June 2001). "Sun slowly sets on uniform of Empire". *The Daily Telegraph*.

[17] "Drill Instructor School: Campaign Cover". 2009-03-28.

[18] Kannik, Preben (1968). *Military Uniforms of the World in Colour*. Blandford Press Ltd. pp. 254–255. ISBN 0-71370482-9.

[19] Official opening of the first session of the eighth parliament

[20] Carmen, W.Y. *A Dictionary of Military Uniform*. p. 137. ISBN 0-684-15130-8.

61.11 External links

- Media related to Pith helmets at Wikimedia Commons
- MilitarySunHelmets.Com : non-commercial website covering history of military sun helmets

The Ensign of the Royal Gibraltar Regiment, when mounting the Queen's Guard in 2012

Italian policewoman wearing tall pith helmet, 1980s.

Thai Royal Guards wearing sun helmets.

Chapter 62

Winged helmet

For the American football helmet used by the University of Michigan and other colleges, see winged football helmet.

A **winged helmet** is a helmet decorated with wings, usually on both sides. Ancient depictions of the god Mercury and of Roma depict them wearing winged helmets, however in the 19th century the winged helmet became widely used to depict ancient Celtic, Germanic and Viking warriors. It was also used in romantic illustrations of legendary Norse gods and heroes. The motif, along with the horned helmet, became a clichéd signifier of the "barbarian" Northern warrior.

62.1 Historical evidence

There is some limited evidence of such decorative motifs being used on actual helmets in the ancient world, but these may have functioned as ceremonial rather than functional objects. Attic helmets decorated with wings of sheet bronze were worn by the Samnites and other Italian peoples before their conquest by Rome. A number of such helmets have been excavated and can be seen in various museums.[1]

Helmets decorated with animal motifs, no doubt including wings, were described by Diodorus Siculus as being worn by Celts.

> "On their heads they wear bronze helmets which possess large projecting figures lending the appearance of enormous stature to the wearer. In some cases horns form one part with the helmet, while in other cases it is relief figures of the foreparts of birds or quadrupeds."

An actual example of this type of Celtic helmet was discovered in Romania, dating to the third century BC: it has a high-mounted crest formed as a bird, possibly an eagle or a raven, with large wings spread out to either side. The crest was cunningly made, the wings articulated at the body so that they would have flapped up and down as the wearer moved.[2] Today this kind of helmet is commonly believed to have been worn by the Celts. The Celts, however, mostly wore plainer helmets of conical or sub-conical shape, such as the 'Montefortino' type later adopted by the Romans.

The ancient depictions of Mercury with a winged helmet are taken to symbolize speed. In modern comic book mythology, this has evolved into the wings present in the helmet or head-portion of the costume of various versions of The Flash.

62.2 See also

- Horned helmet
- Horned God
- Golden hat
- Pointy hat

A 19th century ship's figurehead depicting Brennus wearing a winged helmet

62.3 References

[1] Connoly, pp. 109-112

[2] Connoly, p. 122

Attic helmet with small bronze decorative wings, Southern Italy 4th Century BC

Celtic helmet with a complete winged-bird crest from the 3rd century BC, found at Ciumesti, Rumania

62.4 Bibliography

- Connolly, P. (1981) *Greece and Rome at War*. Macdonald Phoebus, London. ISBN 1-85367-303-X

62.5 External links

- The Official History of the Winged Football Helmet
- Michigan's Winged Helmet

62.6 Text and image sources, contributors, and licenses

62.6.1 Text

- **Benty Grange Helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Benty%20Grange%20Helmet?oldid=606475593 *Contributors:* Penfold, Oobopshark, Quarl, Chroniclev, AdamFunk, Sigo, Walgamanus, Goldenrowley, Pharillon, Victuallers, Wilhelm meis, VolkovBot, Kathleen.wright5, Nathandbeal, Addbot, Lightbot, Yobot, Vincenzo80, RjwilmsiBot, Werieth, Helpful Pixie Bot, Mapedia and Anonymous: 2
- **Coppergate Helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Coppergate%20Helmet?oldid=643657188 *Contributors:* Dbachmann, Rjwilmsi, GuillaumeTell, Courcelles, Cydebot, Drahreg01, Urselius, CommonsDelinker, Ja 62, Wilhelm meis, VolkovBot, Harkey Lodger, Philip Trueman, Kaly99, ClueBot, Addbot, LaaknorBot, Lightbot, Rubinbot, Eon925, LucienBOT, Vincenzo80, H3llBot, PatHadley, Davidiad, Khazar2, Mapedia and Anonymous: 5
- **Coventry Sallet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Coventry%20Sallet?oldid=588756717 *Contributors:* Pigsonthewing, Shastrix, Mooncow, Genisock2, Dl2000, Magioladitis, Johnbod, Wilhelm meis, Hchc2009, Rock drum, RjwilmsiBot, Baseball Watcher, Helpful Pixie Bot, Tom Pippens, Steampunk Major and Khazar2
- **Crosby Garrett Helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Crosby%20Garrett%20Helmet?oldid=653952798 *Contributors:* Peter Kaminski, WhisperToMe, Tpbradbury, Mervyn, Neutrality, Sukiari, Mcbishop, Rjwilmsi, Rhodian, SmackBot, Wittylama, Portillo, Bazonka, Greenshed, Paul S, Midnightblueowl, Dia^, Cydebot, TenthEagle, Amandajm, PamD, Ericoides, Lilac Soul, Victuallers, Wilhelm meis, VolkovBot, Philip Trueman, Martinevans123, JuneGloom07, IdreamofJeanie, Londonclanger, Addbot, BabelStone, 5 albert square, JackieBot, HJ Mitchell, Keri, Ale And Quail, Minimac, Sarastro1, RjwilmsiBot, Susanne2009NYC, EmausBot, Solarra, Wieralee, WikipedianD, Wayne Slam, Demiurge1000, Mannix Chan, Edgarrr, King Ranvir, Dr. Harry Sharp, Prioryman, Drgkl, RafikiSykes, Helpful Pixie Bot, The Banner Turbo, Davidiad, BattyBot, ChrisGualtieri, Laplacemat, Pichou01, Jononmac46 and Anonymous: 26
- **Guisborough Helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Guisborough%20Helmet?oldid=657252530 *Contributors:* Wetman, Circeus, Cydebot, Keith D, Wilhelm meis, Francish7, 703Frank, Londonclanger, Mootros, Philafrenzy, Prioryman, Biggleswiki and Helpful Pixie Bot
- **Hallaton Helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hallaton%20Helmet?oldid=604405727 *Contributors:* Cydebot, Dudley Miles, Wilhelm meis, Nedrutland, Dandrew.ptsem, Deanlaw, Londonclanger, Addbot, RedBot, Letdemsay, Brandmeister, Philafrenzy, Prioryman, RafikiSykes, Helpful Pixie Bot, Dj777cool, BattyBot and Khazar2
- **Helmet of Agighiol** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Helmet%20of%20Agighiol?oldid=646709953 *Contributors:* Dwaipayanc, CristianChirita, Codrinb, Biruitorul, Wilhelm meis, Steel1943, OlEnglish and Marcocapelle
- **Helmet of Coțofenești** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Helmet%20of%20Co%C8%9Bofene%C8%99ti?oldid=640369253 *Contributors:* Bogdangiusca, Woohookitty, CristianChirita, Grafen, Gadget850, Codrinb, SmackBot, Hmains, Chris the speller, Dahn, Biruitorul, Cynwolfe, Keith D, CommonsDelinker, Wilhelm meis, Addbot, Yobot, EmausBot, GoingBatty, ZéroBot, BAICAN XXX, Boldwin, Helpful Pixie Bot, Hmainsbot1 and Anonymous: 1
- **Helmet of Iron Gates** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Helmet%20of%20Iron%20Gates?oldid=646710038 *Contributors:* Alan Liefting, CristianChirita, Grafen, Codrinb, Attilios, Hmains, Ser Amantio di Nicolao, CommonsDelinker, Wilhelm meis, JL-Bot, Niceguyedc, OlEnglish, Yobot, AnomieBOT, SporkBot, Marcocapelle, ChrisGualtieri and Anonymous: 1
- **Helmet of Peretu** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Helmet%20of%20Peretu?oldid=646710099 *Contributors:* Dwaipayanc, CristianChirita, Biruitorul, Igodard, Wilhelm meis, Carriearchdale, OlEnglish, Yobot, Marcocapelle and Anonymous: 1
- **Meyrick Helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Meyrick%20Helmet?oldid=649453173 *Contributors:* Eleuther, Johnbod, Victuallers, Wilhelm meis, Wikiuser100, BabelStone, Helpful Pixie Bot, Burne-Jones and Anonymous: 2
- **Newstead Helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Newstead%20Helmet?oldid=638768513 *Contributors:* Hiberniantears, SeanMack, Ben MacDui, Johnbod, Victuallers, Wilhelm meis, Martinevans123, Addbot, BabelStone, WikitanvirBot, Prioryman, Helpful Pixie Bot, Halflang and Anonymous: 2
- **Nijmegen Helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Nijmegen%20Helmet?oldid=552712752 *Contributors:* Wilhelm meis, Brandmeister, Dj777cool and Anonymous: 1
- **Pioneer Helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pioneer%20Helmet?oldid=635129046 *Contributors:* Bearcat, Malleus Fatuorum, Urselius, Wilhelm meis, Nathandbeal, Froghood, Diggerian, BG19bot and Khazar2
- **Ribchester Helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ribchester%20Helmet?oldid=551005829 *Contributors:* Charles Matthews, Wetman, SmackBot, Hmains, Ser Amantio di Nicolao, NewTestLeper79, Johnbod, Victuallers, Belovedfreak, 83d40m, Wilhelm meis, Martinevans123, JuneGloom07, PixelBot, Addbot, BabelStone, Prioryman, Madveek and Anonymous: 2
- **Shorwell Helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Shorwell%20Helmet?oldid=642727583 *Contributors:* Timrollpickering, Woodshed, Urgos, Jcc, Mz7, ArticlesForCreationBot, BattyBot, Cavalryman V31 and Anonymous: 1
- **Waterloo Helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Waterloo%20Helmet?oldid=628957757 *Contributors:* KConWiki, Johnbod, Victuallers, IceDragon64, Wilhelm meis, Piledhigheranddeeper, PixelBot, Kabuto 7, Addbot, BabelStone, Daicaregos, Brandmeister, Helpful Pixie Bot and Anonymous: 3
- **Attic helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Attic%20helmet?oldid=638224580 *Contributors:* D6, Chris the speller, Snori, Cplakidas, Sailko, Cydebot, Thijs!bot, Urselius, Carlomorino, Wilhelm meis, VolkovBot, Macedonian, Catalographer, Addbot, Numbo3-bot, Dorieo, Rubinbot, Μυρμηγκάκι, LucienBOT, Helpful Pixie Bot, Davidiad, Marcocapelle and Anonymous: 5
- **Boar's tusk helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Boar'{}s%20tusk%20helmet?oldid=629233638 *Contributors:* Anthony Appleyard, Stemonitis, Woohookitty, Malcolma, .marc., Cplakidas, Fabrictramp, Wilhelm meis, Macedonian, Archaiologos, Dimboukas, Blanchardb, SchreiberBike, Catalographer, Addbot, Luckas-bot, Xqbot, PeithoArtemis, Matthdan, ClueBot NG, Davidiad, Dexbot, Delmerday and Anonymous: 4
- **Boeotian helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Boeotian%20helmet?oldid=647100867 *Contributors:* D6, Megistias, Snori, Moshe Constantine Hassan Al-Silverburg, Cplakidas, Butko, Cydebot, Urselius, Wilhelm meis, Macedonian, VVVBot, Catalographer, MystBot, Addbot, BabelStone, Numbo3-bot, Dorieo, KDS4444, ZéroBot, ClueBot NG, Marcocapelle and Anonymous: 5

- **Chalcidian helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chalcidian%20helmet?oldid=650060965 *Contributors:* Larry Dunn, Woohookitty, Rjwilmsi, CristianChirita, Megistias, Cplakidas, Ehistory, Cydebot, Wilhelm meis, Macedonian, Gerakibot, ClueBot, Catalographer, Addbot, Numbo3-bot, Luckas-bot, KamikazeBot, Dorieo, Rubinbot, Gmunder, ClueBot NG, Helpful Pixie Bot, Marcocapelle and Anonymous: 7
- **Coolus helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Coolus%20helmet?oldid=651083696 *Contributors:* The wub, Pegship, Alex Schröder, Neddyseagoon, Aldis90, JustAGal, Wilhelm meis, XPTO, Catalographer, Addbot, BabelStone, Patton123, Luckas-bot, Yobot, RedBot, Jesse V., EmausBot, Merrymoo112, Asami368, Saledo72 and Anonymous: 3
- **Corinthian helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Corinthian%20helmet?oldid=657153118 *Contributors:* Michael Hardy, Zocky, Jtdirl, Jpbrenna, Danno~enwiki, Mzajac, D6, CALR, Discospinster, Dbachmann, MatthiasKabel, Larry Dunn, Angr, SDC, Graeme-Leggett, BD2412, ColinWatts, Miskin, SchuminWeb, Roboto de Ajvol, TexasAndroid, RussBot, Thane, Megistias, N. Harmonik, Astavrou, Hmains, Thumperward, Snori, Moshe Constantine Hassan Al-Silverburg, Cplakidas, Sckchui, DangerousPanda, Cydebot, Gogo Dodo, Thijs!bot, WinBot, EvilStormSam, Wasell, Bibi Saint-Pol, Wilhelm meis, Filipo, VolkovBot, Macedonian, Starrjack1, Falcon8765, WikiBotas, ClueBot, PipepBot, Catalographer, XLinkBot, Addbot, Mac Dreamstate, Numbo3-bot, Pinethicket, Kapedano, Cavitaro, ZéroBot, ClueBot NG, Kinaro, Marcocapelle, ChrisGualtieri, DanielC46, Frosty, KierraF, MigsReb, Goldenheritage, Justinator13 and Anonymous: 52
- **Galea (helmet)** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Galea%20(helmet)?oldid=623283319 *Contributors:* The Anome, Michael Hardy, Xanzzibar, DocWatson42, Smalljim, Pol098, Miq, The wub, Dialectric, Deucalionite, Botteville, SmackBot, Roscelese, Hibernian, Colonies Chris, Neddyseagoon, Argento, Andreworkney, Necessary Evil, Cydebot, Aldis90, Panarjedde, RedMC, KTo288, Pocklington-Dan, Wilhelm meis, Sometimesseespeople, SYcoon, Technopat, Suriel1981, PericlesofAthens, Oxymoron83, Ratemonth, ClueBot, Konsumkind, Aqwseedd, Cirt, Elizium23, Catalographer, Jtle515, Addbot, Chris 1,000,001, BabelStone, Bloodkith, Lightbot, MuZemike, Pieeaterman, Dr tselepis l, Duży Bartek, EmausBot, ClueBot NG, Widr, MerlIwBot, Marcocapelle, Ducknish, TechnoConfusion and Anonymous: 36
- **Illyrian type helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Illyrian%20type%20helmet?oldid=645768486 *Contributors:* Drbreznjev, CristianChirita, Kedadi, Bhny, Megistias, Deucalionite, Hmains, Snori, Cydebot, Reywas92, Wilhelm meis, Macedonian, Slovenski Volk, Muhandes, Catalographer, Zykasaa, Addbot, Bratislav, Luckas-bot, Dorieo, Alexikoua, Obersachsebot, Papa-Zhuli, Vinie007, RjwilmsiBot, ZjarriRrethues, Cobaltcigs, Mentibot, No. 108, Zoupan, ClueBot NG, GeoTrou, Helpful Pixie Bot, PhnomPencil, Davidiad, Marcocapelle, Hmainsbot1, Frosty and Anonymous: 10
- **Imperial helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Imperial%20helmet?oldid=644826043 *Contributors:* Klemen Kocjancic, Shenme, Hiberniantears, The wub, Rintrah, Deucalionite, SmackBot, Hmains, Tartessos75, Neddyseagoon, Symposiarch, Aldis90, Geniac, Urselius, KTo288, Wilhelm meis, Galena11, Philip Trueman, Complex (de), Altosax456, ClueBot, Jusdafax, Catalographer, Addbot, BabelStone, Lightbot, J04n, IRISZOOM, Carmichael, ClueBot NG, Alex Nico, Mogism and Anonymous: 21
- **Kegelhelm** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kegelhelm?oldid=630004343 *Contributors:* D6, FlaBot, Megistias, Sir Gawain, Cydebot, Wilhelm meis, Macedonian, Catalographer, Addbot, Yobot, Dorieo, Helpful Pixie Bot, Marcocapelle, Hmainsbot1 and Anonymous: 2
- **Konos (helmet)** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Konos%20(helmet)?oldid=618674736 *Contributors:* Chowbok, Josh Parris, Catalographer, Addbot, GK1973, Fraggle81, ZéroBot, Helpful Pixie Bot, Davidiad, SamIAm.Fil and Anonymous: 2
- **Late Roman ridge helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Late%20Roman%20ridge%20helmet?oldid=644597717 *Contributors:* Bearcat, Pol098, Chris the speller, Hibernian, Cplakidas, Altaileopard, Epbr123, Cynwolfe, Urselius, Wilhelm meis, PericlesofAthens, Niceguyedc, Addbot, Yobot, AnomieBOT, Franco3450, EmausBot, ClueBot NG, Kamkek, Vibhijain, Helpful Pixie Bot, MMFA, VoxelBot, FourViolas and Anonymous: 4
- **Montefortino helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Montefortino%20helmet?oldid=551707381 *Contributors:* Mcapdevila, Danno~enwiki, Wtmitchell, Rjwilmsi, The wub, SmackBot, Moshe Constantine Hassan Al-Silverburg, Neddyseagoon, Aldis90, Magioladitis, KTo288, Wilhelm meis, WikiBotas, Power2the1, PixelBot, Catalographer, Addbot, BabelStone, Luckas-bot, Yobot, ClueBot NG, BattyBot and Anonymous: 10
- **Negau helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Negau%20helmet?oldid=648443050 *Contributors:* Zocky, Steinsky, Wiglaf, CALR, Dbachmann, Sukiari, A2Kafir, Grutness, Mathiastck, Asdfgl, Gardar Rurak, Mithridates, Eleassar, Megistias, Botteville, Bggoldie~enwiki, Hibernian, Neddyseagoon, Bmees, Cydebot, Thijs!bot, Tgpedersen, STBot, CommonsDelinker, Wilhelm meis, Funandtrvl, Dancing-Philosopher, RafaAzevedo, Alexbot, Lord Hidelan, Muro Bot, BOTarate, Catalographer, DumZiBoT, Addbot, Lightbot, Zorrobot, Luckas-bot, Yobot, AnomieBOT, Arjun G. Menon, Stiivyn, LucienBOT, Doremo, ZéroBot and Anonymous: 5
- **Phrygian helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Phrygian%20helmet?oldid=644703231 *Contributors:* Ruakh, Sus scrofa, CambridgeBayWeather, Megistias, Snori, Sailko, Cydebot, Urselius, Wilhelm meis, Macedonian, Audaciter, Catalographer, MystBot, Addbot, Rubinbot, Jesse V., WikitanvirBot, ZéroBot, Life in General, GeoTrou, Helpful Pixie Bot, Marcocapelle and Anonymous: 2
- **Shmarjet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Shmarjet?oldid=576209788 *Contributors:* Ketiltrout, Megistias, JohnI, Aldis90, Cynwolfe, Wilhelm meis, Zykasaa, FrescoBot, Mmmham and Whatelsetodo
- **Armet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Armet?oldid=655139431 *Contributors:* SimonP, Jtdirl, Nickshanks, Teut, Dylac~enwiki, Leibniz, Mailer diablo, Angr, BlankVerse, SchuminWeb, Kirill Lokshin, Hellbus, Crystallina, Durova, Chris the speller, Somnlaut, TheKaplan, Kasey54, Thijs!bot, Chris Hardy, Mercutio.Wilder, Waerloeg, RebelRobot, Urselius, CommonsDelinker, STBotD, Wilhelm meis, VolkovBot, SoxBot III, Addbot, Sikovin, SpBot, Idot, Rubinbot, Internoob, GrouchoBot, Gruß Tom, Thehelpfulbot, FrescoBot, Urgos, Farkasven, Jauhienij, Rabbabodrool, ChuispastonBot, Infinifold, OmegaFudge, ConcernedApe, Khazar2, Daniel17sep, Ghost Lourde and Anonymous: 15
- **Aventail** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Aventail?oldid=618673745 *Contributors:* SimonP, RickK, Cyrius, Centrx, Eyrian, Deirdre~enwiki, RJFJR, Bullenwächter, SeventyThree, Dsnow75, Lil Shoggoth, Crystallina, SmackBot, Durova, Mr Stephen, Amalas, Marcvh, Urselius, CommonsDelinker, Johnbod, VolkovBot, Rei-bot, SieBot, Nashville strigoi, MystBot, Addbot, Sikovin, Lightbot, Luckas-bot, Yobot, Adeliine, Bob Burkhardt, Xqbot, Erik9bot, TobeBot, EmausBot, ChuispastonBot and Anonymous: 13
- **Barbute** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Barbute?oldid=659111854 *Contributors:* DocWatson42, Dbachmann, Avalyn, Debivort, Kirill Lokshin, Elp gr, Crystallina, Simon Beavis, Betacommand, Durova, PKT, Wandalstouring, Mercutio.Wilder, Waerloeg, Haltiamieli, Parkerbrown2000, Urselius, Wilhelm meis, VolkovBot, Macedonian, WikiBotas, Muro Bot, Addbot, Sikovin, Csigabi, GrouchoBot, TarseeRota, Jauhienij, Jesse V., Mfernandez157, Khazar2, Toxophilus, FestiveLemur and Anonymous: 19

- **Bascinet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bascinet?oldid=641550921 *Contributors:* Jtdirl, Andres, Steinsky, Maximus Rex, Wetman, Riddley, AlainV, DocWatson42, Eyrian, Deirdre~enwiki, Dbachmann, Syatoslav, Jheald, Alai, Angr, Fred J, Tabletop, Ligulem, SchuminWeb, Takwish, Gaius Cornelius, Caerwine, Sandstein, Sepand, Allens, Nathan Robinson, Eskimbot, UrsaFoot, Hmains, Durova, Keithh, Legotech, Evilhippo, Thijs!bot, Waerloeg, ElComandanteChe, Magioladitis, Urselius, Johnbod, Ephebi, Wilhelm meis, Biscuittin, Audaciter, Felix Folio Secundus, Addbot, Sikovin, Groundsquirrel13, Kingsix6878, Lightbot, Al3xil, Idot, AnomieBOT, Bob Burkhardt, Brad101AWB, Revares, Urgos, Monstrelet, Felis domestica, Kiyoweap, PleaseStand, AvicAWB, Rcsprinter123, BG19bot, Warbowarcher, Khazar2, Hmainsbot1, Mogism, Adkisaac, DavidBrooks-AWB and Anonymous: 23
- **Burgonet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Burgonet?oldid=644584159 *Contributors:* DocWatson42, Keith Edkins, Dbachmann, Pearle, RJFJR, CristianChirita, Gaius Cornelius, Bachrach44, Avalon, Nathan Robinson, SmackBot, Frap, Idiomatic~enwiki, Mon Vier, Locutus Borg~enwiki, Andypandy.UK, Fordmadoxfraud, Cydebot, Luccas, Dougweller, Aldis90, Waerloeg, M Van Houten, Urselius, Wilhelm meis, VolkovBot, TXiKiBoT, Tmaull, Atmamatma, PbBot, WikiBotas, Missourinez, DumZiBoT, XLinkBot, Addbot, Sikovin, Campolongo, Yobot, TaBOT-zerem, Obersachsebot, FrescoBot, OmegaFudge, DavidBrooks-AWB, Donglove and Anonymous: 17
- **Cervelliere** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cervelliere?oldid=623843759 *Contributors:* Jtdirl, Riddley, DocWatson42, Niteowlneils, Rich Farmbrough, Bill Thayer, Lectonar, Alai, Nuno Tavares, Angr, Rjwilmsi, FlaBot, SchuminWeb, Kirill Lokshin, Caerwine, Crystallina, SmackBot, Durova, The Black Knight, Serein (renamed because of SUL), Argento, Waerloeg, Milece, Urselius, Flyer22, DeltaQuad, Jmont1, Addbot, Sikovin, Jormantis, Lightbot, The real Marcoman, Erik9bot, Лапоть, Dinamik-bot, Kiyoweap, John of Reading, FestiveLemur and Anonymous: 8
- **Close helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Close%20helmet?oldid=580662418 *Contributors:* DocWatson42, Melaen, Rjwilmsi, MZMcBride, SmackBot, Hibernian, Sadads, Addshore, Bwpach, Colonel Warden, Aldis90, Magioladitis, Urselius, Johnbod, Wilhelm meis, Andy Dingley, Lisatwo, KathrynLybarger, Willisis2, Addbot, Chikenman138, Rjohnstone47, AnomieBOT, Dan Murphy, Amendola90, TarseeRota, John of Reading, ClueBot NG, Willknowsalmosteverything, Devinpitcher and Anonymous: 15
- **Enclosed helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Enclosed%20helmet?oldid=646085298 *Contributors:* Skysmith, DocWatson42, DragonflySixtyseven, SmackBot, Deathlibrarian, WhiteCrane, RebelRobot, Magioladitis, Twigler, Urselius, Reedy Bot, Kudpung, Johnbod, Wilhelm meis, Andy Dingley, Blanchardb, Idot, Originalylem, The real Marcoman, FrescoBot, Felis domestica, Khazar2 and Anonymous: 8
- **L'Eplattenier helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/L'Eplattenier%20helmet?oldid=537557106 *Contributors:* Klemen Kocjancic, Rama, Ikar.us, The ed17, Aldis90 and Anonymous: 1
- **Falling buffe** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Falling%20buffe?oldid=565779102 *Contributors:* Jerzy, Giraffedata, Grutness, Hohum, Johnbod, Jormantis, Idot and Anonymous: 2
- **Frog-mouth helm** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Frog-mouth%20helm?oldid=647231162 *Contributors:* Bearcat, DocWatson42, Malcolma, Johnbod, Wilhelm meis, Dawn Bard, ImageRemovalBot, Dangling Conversation, Londonclanger, Citation bot, Quebec99, The real Marcoman, ArticlesForCreationBot, You Can Act Like A Man, Wywin, VampireFreak09 and Anonymous: 6
- **Great helm** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Great%20helm?oldid=644256177 *Contributors:* Edward, Jtdirl, Rich Farmbrough, Nebiros~enwiki, Anthony Appleyard, Guthrie, Angr, Cuchullain, Rjwilmsi, Nightscream, SchuminWeb, Sus scrofa, YurikBot, Conscious, Kirill Lokshin, Sandstein, Groyolo, Crystallina, SmackBot, Durova, Snori, Sadads, Patriarch, JRPG, Akiyama, Thijs!bot, Mercutio.Wilder, Waerloeg, JAnDbot, FlieGerFaUstMe262, Flexdream, Urselius, Captain panda, Johnbod, Wilhelm meis, VolkovBot, Firstorm, A4bot, Transformer-Z, Karlgun, Andy Dingley, SieBot, Shakko, Hamiltondaniel, Wutsje, Nashville strigoi, Wprlh, Audaciter, Missourinez, XLinkBot, Addbot, Sikovin, Sillyfolkboy, AndersBot, Yobot, AnomieBOT, FrescoBot, Scarred, HRoestBot, Callofduty4, Jauhienij, Dinamik-bot, John of Reading, WikitanvirBot, Faceless Enemy, RaptureBot, MerlIwBot, Iste Praetor, Macesito, Thespartanpenguin, Zacwill16 and Anonymous: 32
- **Hounskull** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hounskull?oldid=655138154 *Contributors:* Raymond, Larry Dunn, Bullenwächter, Johnbod, Wilhelm meis, Hamiltondaniel, Baronofcheese, Wireframe-model, Lightbot, Yobot, Dorieo, LilHelpa, The real Marcoman, Лапоть, Historicus09, Helpful Pixie Bot, Macesito, Ghost Lourde and Anonymous: 2
- **Kabuto** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kabuto?oldid=658940794 *Contributors:* Jtdirl, Emperorbma, WhisperToMe, DJ Clayworth, Jerzy, Phil Boswell, Dina, Comatose51, Sh~enwiki, Fg2, Zondor, Canterbury Tail, Rama, Pjf, J44xm, TaintedMustard, BDD, LordAmeth, Kouban, Angr, Chrkl, SchuminWeb, MacRusgail, Gdrbot, YurikBot, Shell Kinney, Kyorosuke, Varano, AjaxSmack, Crisco 1492, La Pizza11, Wsiegmund, SmackBot, Moez, Ominae, Kintetsubuffalo, Hmains, Mairibot, Durova, Bluebot, Colonies Chris, Tamfang, Kitty the Random, Illythr, Waggers, Ryulong, Cydebot, Synergy, Aldis90, Thijs!bot, SonicBlue, JAnDbot, Leolaursen, CommonsDelinker, Wilhelm meis, Dctite, Watto the jazzman, TXiKiBoT, Andres rojas22, Tmaull, Chamekke, Kaguyahime, PbBot, Martarius, ClueBot, ARTESJAPONICA, Relly Komaruzaman, Bourgignon54, Ost316, Addbot, Magus732, Tide rolls, Mps, Luckas-bot, Yobot, Aimaimyi, Analphabot, Xqbot, JimVC3, Touchage9887, XZeroBot, Tad Lincoln, Лапоть, MastiBot, Yunshui, DTRHStudios, DexDor, Samuraiantiqueworld, ChuispastonBot, ClueBot NG, Frietjes, Helpful Pixie Bot, MusikAnimal, ChrisGualtieri, Frosty, Jojo4x4, Trackteur and Anonymous: 54
- **Kettle hat** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kettle%20hat?oldid=621556880 *Contributors:* Jtdirl, David Latapie, Robbot, Alexf, Dylac~enwiki, Anthony Appleyard, Fat pig73, RainbowOfLight, Angr, Before My Ken, GraemeLeggett, SchuminWeb, Kirill Lokshin, Dialectric, Brian Crawford, Lockesdonkey, Crystallina, SmackBot, Emoscopes, Mike McGregor (Can), Durova, Thumperward, Jfreyre, Amalas, Gogo Dodo, Jack Bethune, Fayenatic london, Urselius, RockMFR, Bobthefishguy, TheKing1066, Wilhelm meis, Master z0b, VolkovBot, JustinHagstrom, Maxim, JoshuaGrainger, BURNyA, Bilsonius, Addbot, Ginosbot, Idot, Erik9bot, Urgos, OgreBot, Jauhienij, ZéroBot, Freemadi, GuyHimGuy, Helpful Pixie Bot and Anonymous: 18
- **Lobster-tailed pot helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lobster-tailed%20pot%20helmet?oldid=651344514 *Contributors:* William Avery, Nv8200p, Kpalion, Mrrhum, Rich Farmbrough, Dbachmann, BD2412, Kirill Lokshin, Crystallina, Aelfthrytha, Durova, Bluebot, Osbus, Neddyseagoon, Amalas, Hmaag, Struthious Bandersnatch, Urselius, CommonsDelinker, Johnbod, V8Cougar, GlassCobra, Nick19thind, Addbot, Yobot, Rubinbot, Piggyinthemiddle, Vincenzo80, Anolis18, ClueBot NG, Morgan Riley, Helpful Pixie Bot, Osama57, YiFeiBot and Anonymous: 7
- **Mempo** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mempo?oldid=657148486 *Contributors:* Fg2, Canterbury Tail, TaintedMustard, LordAmeth, Bgwhite, Kirill Lokshin, Pawyilee, ViperSnake151, SmackBot, Hmains, Durova, Persian Poet Gal, Tamfang, Tenkiya, CuriousEric, Hydraton31, CommonsDelinker, Wilhelm meis, Matthewseanpeiffer, Phe-bot, Tnxman307, Good Olfactory, Addbot, Jafeluv, Luckas-bot, Yobot, Ptbotgourou, SassoBot, FreeKnowledgeCreator, RedBot, Yunshui, Samuraiantiqueworld, ZéroBot, Frietjes, Helpful Pixie Bot, AvocatoBot and Anonymous: 11

- **Morion (helmet)** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Morion%20(helmet)?oldid=639312694 *Contributors:* Varlaam, Eyrian, Dbachmann, TaintedMustard, Scriberius, RussBot, Witan, Appleseed, SmackBot, Nativeborncal, Snori, Locutus Borg~enwiki, Boreas74, Woodshed, AlbertSM, Fordmadoxfraud, Languagehat, BetacommandBot, JamesAM, Oreo Priest, JAnDbot, Diego Azeta, R'n'B, CommonsDelinker, Johnbod, AntiSpamBot, Wilhelm meis, Hugo999, Bitbut, SieBot, CultureDrone, WikiBotas, Elsweyn, Nick19thind, Alexbot, Addbot, Zorrobot, Luckas-bot, Yobot, Rogerb67, ArthurBot, Winterwater, Urgos, Vincenzo80, EmperorOwen993, Jandalhandler, Obsidian Soul, K6ka, ZéroBot, A930913, ClueBot NG, Helpful Pixie Bot, Osama57, FLNGcherryholmes, Khazar2, Animus93, Dnalor 01 and Anonymous: 24
- **Nasal helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Nasal%20helmet?oldid=656147950 *Contributors:* Eyrian, Witan, Kirill Lokshin, Sandstein, Herostratus, Srnec, Moshe Constantine Hassan Al-Silverburg, CmdrObot, Alaibot, Brendandh, Magioladitis, Blackthorn9, Kiminatheguardian, Urselius, Andy Dingley, Nashville strigoi, Addbot, Sikovin, Rubinbot, Obersachsebot, The real Marcoman, Jlanoть, BodvarBjarki, Jauhienij, Macesito and Anonymous: 7
- **Pickelhaube** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pickelhaube?oldid=645596446 *Contributors:* Ben-Zin~enwiki, Mintguy, Kchishol1970, Jtdirl, Cyde, TUF-KAT, Jacquerie27, Schneelocke, Gamma~enwiki, Penfold, Ortonmc, Dimadick, Riddley, Astronautics~enwiki, Chris 73, Sam Spade, Ianb, Halibutt, Fabiform, Archie, Gzornenplatz, Darrien, Opera hat, Sysin, Ashmodai, Rich Farmbrough, Flapdragon, Haham hanuka, Merenta, Ashley Pomeroy, Milesli, Pauli133, Bastin, Stemonitis, Angr, Marudubshinki, Rjwilmsi, Olessi, FlaBot, Schuminweb, Ground Zero, Sanbeg, Quuxplusone, Thecurran, Ryssby, Benvenuto, Straker, Sus scrofa, YurikBot, Hairy Dude, Tresckow, Hydrargyrum, GeeJo, Worldwalker, Crisco 1492, Red Jay, SmackBot, NantucketNoon, Rcbutcher, Emurphy42, Morton devonshire, CJBR, JHunterJ, Neddyseagoon, Hogyn Lleol, Zemlod, Wilhelm Wiesel, The ed17, Cydebot, Wordbuilder, Robertsteadman, Aldis90, Buistr, Thijs!bot, Jack Bethune, Hbquikcomjamesl, Howard61313, Ingolfson, Gavrant, Catslash, Jsobral, 52 Pickup, M Van Houten, Blue Dinosaur Jr, CommonsDelinker, Rrostrom, Garret Beaumain, LGR109~enwiki, MishaPan, Wilhelm meis, Idioma-bot, Firstorm, Andres rojas22, Sealman, Pjoef, Logan, 13dble, AdRock, UnneededAplomb, SieBot, Dreamafter, Phe-bot, Flyer22, Moonraker12, Tesi1700, Drmies, Nick19thind, Hugowannahoogie, Prussian-Hussar, Niteshift36, Lainidh, Iohannes Animosus, Bilsonius, Ww2collection, Addbot, QZip, Luckas-bot, Ptbotgourou, Raviaka Ruslan, Radiopathy, AnomieBOT, Rubinbot, Jeni, Materialscientist, Nasnema, Sylwia Ufnalska, GrouchoBot, Omnipaedista, Joan Rocaguinard, FrescoBot, Recognizance, D'ohBot, Degen Earthfast, JMRAMOS0109, Lotje, Dave the translator, Between My Ken, DexDor, MtulliusC, Christoph Braun, WikitanvirBot, AmericanLeMans, GoingBatty, Pankrator, Mount Flatten, ClueBot NG, Prussiansoldier, Sebastiensecrets, Engelberger, Helpful Pixie Bot, Risukarhi, Iselilja, Mungo Shuntbox, Harizotoh9, Osama57, Limihy, Jafloresl, Hmainsbot1, Mogism, Jared1243568 and Anonymous: 96
- **Sallet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sallet?oldid=638376557 *Contributors:* Rmhermen, Jtdirl, Maximus Rex, Centrx, DocWatson42, Geni, Dylac~enwiki, Deelkar, Dy-Lac, Angr, SchuminWeb, Kirill Lokshin, Sandstein, Crystallina, SmackBot, Hmains, Durova, Neddyseagoon, Fvasconcellos, AlbertSM, Thijs!bot, Mercutio.Wilder, Tomenes~enwiki, Waerloeg, Jim.henderson, Urselius, CommonsDelinker, Johnbod, Wilhelm meis, VolkovBot, LeaveSleaves, Rev. V!, Hamiltondaniel, WikiBotas, PipepBot, Addbot, Sikovin, Urbourbo, Lightbot, Al3xil, Yobot, Idot, LilHelpa, The real Marcoman, Farkasven, Vincenzo80, PigFlu Oink, EmausBot, Khazar2, SteenthIWbot, Zacwill16 and Anonymous: 23
- **Secrete (helmet)** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Secrete%20(helmet)?oldid=659632080 *Contributors:* Geni, Urselius, Johnbod, Urgos, Macesito, Sourov0000 and Anonymous: 1
- **Spangenhelm** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spangenhelm?oldid=655842840 *Contributors:* Wetman, MisfitToys, Eyrian, Stbalbach, Bender235, Circeus, Larry Dunn, Angr, Richard Arthur Norton (1958-), Amir85, FlaBot, Bgwhite, RussBot, Kirill Lokshin, Adaxl, Crystallina, Durova, Geneb1955, Elendil's Heir, Jfreyre, Michael Bednarek, Billyfishzwei, Amandajm, Aldis90, Altaileopard, Jack Bethune, Gun Powder Ma, Urselius, The Show-Ender, Wilhelm meis, Idioma-bot, VolkovBot, Gamer112, Tmaull, Piratedan, Nashville strigoi, Addbot, Sikovin, LaaknorBot, Zorrobot, Luckas-bot, Jdsteakley, GrouchoBot, The real Marcoman, Völkerwanderer and Anonymous: 13
- **Helmet (heraldry)** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Helmet%20(heraldry)?oldid=645436981 *Contributors:* DocWatson42, Orangemike, DVdm, Gadget850, Yopie, Bjankuloski06en~enwiki, Illythr, E.G., Mukake, Num1dgen, Wilhelm meis, TXiKiBoT, Ori, Addbot, Fyrael, Roux, Luckas-bot, Omnipaedista, Mattis, Nightsturm, TobeBot, WikitanvirBot, Helpful Pixie Bot, Liushazhai, SajoR, Snowsuit Wearer, Arms Jones, J-Ronn and Anonymous: 9
- **Horned helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Horned%20helmet?oldid=655985393 *Contributors:* Jtdirl, Marteau, Haabet, Nikola Smolenski, Wetman, Finlay McWalter, Wiglaf, Iceberg3k, Bodnotbod, Dbachmann, Summer Song, Nev, Nsaa, J Heath, Angr, Thivierr, Essjay, Rjwilmsi, SchuminWeb, StopTheFiling, Gaius Cornelius, Bloodofox, Badagnani, Engineer Bob, Barry Wells, SmackBot, InverseHypercube, Hmains, Durova, Tamfang, Henning Makholm, Birdman1, Grumpy444grumpy~enwiki, Crüsäder, Rlk89, Thijs!bot, Epbr123, Childeric~enwiki, BCube, Sigurd Dragon Slayer, Tgpedersen, Lenticel, Kiore, Johnbod, Wilhelm meis, Macedonian, Lexein, Caran Varr, Kåre Fog, Saddhiyama, O not, Avmarle, Addbot, Holt, BabelStone, Dave.liepmann, Lightbot, AnomieBOT, La comadreja, Urgos, Scarred, Pinethicket, LittleWink, ClueBot NG, Loneaircadet, Helpful Pixie Bot, Osama57, Khazar2 and Anonymous: 48
- **Mahiole** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mahiole?oldid=648002711 *Contributors:* Muke, Kwamikagami, Tabletop, Elonka, Notafly, The PIPE, Ser Amantio di Nicolao, PamD, Johnbod, Victuallers, Wilhelm meis, Mark Miller, Sfan00 IMG, Boing! said Zebedee, Islandbaygardener, Addbot, Krenakarore, AnomieBOT, Materialscientist, FrescoBot, W Nowicki, Simple Bob, John of Reading, ZéroBot, TYelliot, Fashionistic, BG19bot, Demoniccathandler, Angelo51051 and Anonymous: 6
- **Tarnhelm** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tarnhelm?oldid=650217965 *Contributors:* Melaen, Frungi, SchuminWeb, NawlinWiki, RossMay, Kingdon, Allansteel, Clarityfiend, Goldfritha, Aldis90, Kgagne, Salad Days, R'n'B, Wilhelm meis, Goustien, Escape Orbit, Obelix83, Auntof6, Addbot, Lotje, Samstokes80, JoIsaza and Anonymous: 11
- **Pith helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pith%20helmet?oldid=649323018 *Contributors:* The Anome, Zocky, Jtdirl, Cyde, Scott, Indefatigable, Dimadick, Donreed, Lowellian, Gidonb, JerryFriedman, DocWatson42, DO'Neil, MisfitToys, DNewhall, Klemen Kocjancic, Mtnerd, Rama, Alistair1978, Pavel Vozenilek, Kross, CDN99, Foobaz, Acntx, Storm Rider, Milesli, Max rspct, Cuyaya, Angr, Woohookitty, Jeff3000, Hakkon, SDC, GraemeLeggett, Rusty2005, SchuminWeb, Nihiltres, Kmanoj, Bgwhite, Sus scrofa, YurikBot, RussBot, Splash, C777, Pseudomonas, SigPig, Camerafiend, Ve3, TDogg310, Emersoni, Gadget850, Zargulon, Pil56, Nick-D, NetRolller 3D, SmackBot, Speight, HeartofaDog, Hmains, The Gnome, Schmiteye, Chris the speller, Thumperward, Rcbutcher, Zazpot, Lozleader, Kingdon, Romanski, Henning Makholm, SaintedLegion, Pen of bushido, John, Noah Salzman, Iridescent, John yazzie1963, Colonel Warden, Dave420, SohanDsouza, Courcelles, FairuseBot, Victoriaedwards, Buistr, Thijs!bot, Mutiny, Jack Bethune, Qwerty Binary, Rorymcd, Muirwood, Rothorpe, Steveprutz, Cgingold, LorenzoB, Spellmaster, Dieseltaylor, Climax Void, CommonsDelinker, KTo288, OhNoPeedyPeebles, Jickyincognito, Hair Commodore, Boznia, Ohms law, Mariano Moldes, Wilhelm meis, Idioma-bot, Caribbean H.Q.,

Thmazing, Tmaull, Turgan, Nitraven, Kernel Saunters, Phe-bot, Sings-With-Spirits, PbBot, SquireJames, Foofbun, Parkwells, Gwguffey, Ziko, Arjayay, Qwfp, God Save Queen Elizabeth, Mortarman81, Alansplodge, Matma Rex, Luckas-bot, Yobot, Legobot II, LilHelpa, ArmTheInsane, Joan Rocaguinard, FrescoBot, Pinethicket, Lotje, Beyond My Ken, John of Reading, H3llBot, Cod Lover Oil, Δ, Many-texts, ClueBot NG, Barabbas1312, Conorfitz999, Katangais, Osama57, Sola Topee, Chris troutman, Randelearcilla and Anonymous: 126

- **Winged helmet** *Source:* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Winged%20helmet?oldid=624540562 *Contributors:* Paul Barlow, Dale Arnett, Mzajac, A2Kafir, Scriberius, Dimitrii, Jweiss11, Noidner, Crystallina, SmackBot, Korossyl, CmdrObot, Amalas, Rifleman 82, Alaibot, Aldis90, Urselius, Aizarik, Garret Beaumain, Wilhelm meis, Unbuttered Parsnip, Albambot, Addbot, Lightbot, PhnomPencil, Chris-Gualtieri and Anonymous: 7

62.6.2 Images

- **File:"Samurai_Art_of_War"_exibition_(Выставка_"Самураи_Art_of_War")_(5911457625).jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/d/d2/%22Samurai_Art_of_War%22_exibition_%28%D0%92%D1%8B%D1%81%D1%82%D0%B0%D0%B2%D0%BA%D0%B0_%22%D0%A1%D0%B0%D0%BC%D1%83%D1%80%D0%B0%D0%B8_Art_of_War%22%29_%285911457625%29.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 2.0 *Contributors:* “Samurai: Art of War” exibition (Выставка "Самураи: Art of War") *Original artist:* Mikhail (Vokabre) Shcherbakov from Moscow, Russia
- **File:'I'iwi_at_Hosmer_Grove,_Haleakala,_Maui,_Hawaii_2.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/5/57/%27I%27iwi_at_Hosmer_Grove%2C_Haleakala%2C_Maui%2C_Hawaii_2.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 2.0 *Contributors:* originally posted to **Flickr** as 'I'iwi at Hosmer Grove, Haleakala, Maui, Hawaii *Original artist:* Kanalu Chock
- **File:'Man_Wearing_Feather_Cloak_and_Helmit',_oil_on_canvas_painting_attributed_to_Rembrandt_Peale.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/9/93/%27Man_Wearing_Feather_Cloak_and_Helmit%27%2C_oil_on_canvas_painting_attributed_to_Rembrandt_Peale.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Bernice P. Bishop Museum *Original artist:* Attributed to Rembrandt Peale
- **File:028_Conrad_Cichorius,_Die_Reliefs_der_Traianssäule,_Tafel_XXVIII_(Ausschnitt_01).jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/3/3c/028_Conrad_Cichorius%2C_Die_Reliefs_der_Traianss%C3%A4ule%2C_Tafel_XXVIII_%28Ausschnitt_01%29.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Conrad Cichorius: “Die Reliefs der Traianssäule”, Erster Tafelband: “Die Reliefs des Ersten Dakischen Krieges”, Tafeln 1-57, Verlag von Georg Reimer, Berlin 1896 *Original artist:* Attributed to Apollodorus of Damascus
- **File:05-183.png** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/8/8f/05-183.png *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* http://www.archive.org/details/dictionnairerai05violuoft *Original artist:* Viollet-le-Duc
- **File:05-184.png** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/e/ef/05-184.png *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* http://www.archive.org/details/dictionnairerai05violuoft *Original artist:* Viollet-le-Duc
- **File:05-187.png** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/3/32/05-187.png *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* http://www.archive.org/details/dictionnairerai05violuoft *Original artist:* Viollet-le-Duc
- **File:05-207.png** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/62/05-207.png *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* http://www.archive.org/details/dictionnairerai05violuoft *Original artist:* Viollet-le-Duc
- **File:05-289a.png** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/0/04/05-289a.png *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* http://www.archive.org/details/dictionnairerai05violuoft *Original artist:* Viollet-le-Duc
- **File:06-119.png** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/f/f7/06-119.png *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* http://www.archive.org/details/dictionnairerai06violuoft *Original artist:* Viollet-le-Duc
- **File:06-120a.png** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/a/a7/06-120a.png *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* http://www.archive.org/details/dictionnairerai06violuoft *Original artist:* Viollet-le-Duc
- **File:0710_Waffen_und_Rüstungen_aus_dem_Historischen_Museum_in_Sanok.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/a/af/0710_Waffen_und_R%C3%BCstungen_aus_dem_Historischen_Museum_in_Sanok.JPG *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Silar
- **File:07_Royal_Marines_Montevideo_Jan1972.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/2/2b/07_Royal_Marines_Montevideo_Jan1972.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 2.5 *Contributors:* http://www.hmsminerva.info/photos10.htm *Original artist:* ?
- **File:2014-06_BLM_Braunschweig_WMDE_(84).jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/a/a0/2014-06_BLM_Braunschweig_WMDE_%2884%29.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Ziko
- **File:51479sweden_helmet.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/a/ac/51479sweden_helmet.jpg *License:* CC-BY-SA-3.0 *Contributors:* english wikipedia *Original artist:* Robert Swanson who is the same person as en:User:Ryssby
- **File:Acropolis_of_Athens_01361.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/3/37/Acropolis_of_Athens_01361.JPG *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* ? *Original artist:* ?
- **File:Aeneasroman_Veldekes.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/f/f2/Aeneasroman_Veldekes.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Scan aus: Peter Dinzelbacher — *Europa im Hochmittelalter 1050 — 1250*, Darmstadt: Wissenschaftliche Buchgesellschaft 2003 S. 150 ISBN 3-89678-474-9 *Original artist:* Unknown
- **File:Aghighiol_Helmet_MNIR_4_2012.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/68/Aghighiol_Helmet_MNIR_4_2012.JPG *License:* GFDL *Contributors:*
  Original artist: Cristian Chirita
- **File:Aghighiol_treasure_cup_2_MNIR_2012.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/8/80/Aghighiol_treasure_cup_2_MNIR_2012.JPG *License:* GFDL *Contributors:*
  Original artist: Cristian Chirita
- **File:Aghighiol_treasure_cup_MNIR_2012.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/a/ad/Aghighiol_treasure_cup_MNIR_2012.JPG *License:* GFDL *Contributors:*
  Original artist: Cristian Chirita

- **File:Altar_Domitius_Ahenobarbus_Louvre_n3bis.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/6b/Altar_Domitius_Ahenobarbus_Louvre_n3bis.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Jastrow (2007) *Original artist:* Unknown
- **File:Ancient_bronze_greek_helmet_-South_Italy.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/9/96/Ancient_bronze_greek_helmet_-South_Italy.jpg *License:* CC BY 2.0 *Contributors:* originally posted to **Flickr** as SNC10132 *Original artist:* davide ferro
- **File:Armadura_medieval.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/f/fe/Armadura_medieval.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* ? *Original artist:* ?
- **File:Armet-nobg.png** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/d/db/Armet-nobg.png *License:* Cc-by-sa-3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Eyrian (talk) (Uploads)
- **File:Barbuta.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/7/71/Barbuta.jpg *License:* CC BY 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Lukasz Olszewski
- **File:Barren-Gott,_Enkomi,_12._Jh._v._Chr._C.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/9/94/Barren-Gott%2C_Enkomi%2C_12._Jh._v._Chr._C.jpg *License:* GFDL *Contributors:* Own work (Original text: *eigenes Foto*) *Original artist:* Gerhard Haubold, Hattingen
- **File:Bascinet_Cologne_FrontView.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/2/27/Bascinet_Cologne_FrontView.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* User:Bullenwächter
- **File:Bascinet_transparent.png** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/e/e4/Bascinet_transparent.png *License:* CC BY-SA 4.0 *Contributors:* Jpg file *Original artist:* Durova (photo)/Macesito (cutted)
- **File:Bayrische_Pickelhaube.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/2/2f/Bayrische_Pickelhaube.jpg *License:* CC BY 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Engelberger
- **File:Benty_Grange_Helm_Boar_Crest.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/7/7f/Benty_Grange_Helm_Boar_Crest.jpg *License:* CC-BY-SA-3.0 *Contributors:* I (Nathandbeal (talk)) created this work entirely by myself. *Original artist:* Nathandbeal (talk)
- **File:Benty_grange_helm.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/6e/Benty_grange_helm.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work (Original text: *I (Nathandbeal (talk)) created this work entirely by myself.*) *Original artist:* Nathandbeal (talk)
- **File:Bismarck_pickelhaube.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/8/8d/Bismarck_pickelhaube.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* ? *Original artist:* ?
- **File:Boar_tusk_helmet_from_Athens.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/4/43/Boar_tusk_helmet_from_Athens.jpg *License:* CC BY 2.0 *Contributors:* http://www.flickr.com/photos/frankfl/26170032/in/set-595147/ *Original artist:* photo by frankfl
- **File:Brennussculpture.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/1/1e/Brennussculpture.jpg *License:* CC-BY-SA-3.0 *Contributors:* ? *Original artist:* ?
- **File:British_Museum_from_NE_2.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/3/3a/British_Museum_from_NE_2.JPG *License:* CC-BY-SA-3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Ham
- **File:British_helmet.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/f/fc/British_helmet.JPG *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* trensferred from the English Wikipedia: en:File:British Helmet 1.JPG *Original artist:* Tyler Velling
- **File:Britishmuseumwaterloohelmet.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/f/fa/Britishmuseumwaterloohelmet.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Ealdgyth (Own work) *Original artist:* ?
- **File:BritsLookingOnBaghdad1941.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/a/a0/BritsLookingOnBaghdad1941.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* This is photograph E 3464 from the collections of the Imperial War Museums (collection no. 4700-32) *Original artist:* Tanner A R (Lieut); No 1 Army Film & Photographic Unit
- **File:Bundesarchiv_Bild_183-R11105,_Kaiser_Wilhelm_II.,_August_v._Mackensen_crop.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/0/05/Bundesarchiv_Bild_183-R11105%2C_Kaiser_Wilhelm_II.%2C_August_v._Mackensen_crop.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 de *Contributors:* This image was provided to Wikimedia Commons by the German Federal Archive (Deutsches Bundesarchiv) as part of a cooperation project. The German Federal Archive guarantees an authentic representation only using the originals (negative and/or positive), resp. the digitalization of the originals as provided by the Digital Image Archive. *Original artist:* Unknown, cropped by H Debussy-Jones (<a href='//commons.wikimedia.org/w/index.php?title=User_talk:H_Debussy-Jones,,&,,action=edit,,&,,redlink=
class='new' title='User talk:H Debussy-Jones (page does not exist)'>talk) 06:00, 14 November 2009 (UTC)
- **File:Burgonet_at_the_Met.png** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/3/36/Burgonet_at_the_Met.png *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Fordmadoxfraud
- **File:Burgonet_helmet,_Nuremberg,_c._1560,_decorated_in_the_17th_century_-_Higgins_Armory_Museum_-_DSC05687.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/4/47/Burgonet_helmet%2C_Nuremberg%2C_c._1560%2C_decorated_in_the_17th_century_-_Higgins_Armory_Museum_-_DSC05687.JPG *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* I took this photograph. *Original artist:* Daderot
- **File:Cabasset.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/3/3a/Cabasset.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 2.0 fr *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Rama
- **File:Casque_orné_4ème_siècle_Musée_Novi_Sad_Colisée_Rome_Italie.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/a/a5/Casque_orn%C3%A9_4%C3%A8me_si%C3%A8cle_Mus%C3%A9e_Novi_Sad_Colis%C3%A9e_Rome_Italie.jpg *License:* CC0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Jebulon
- **File:Chalcidean_helmet.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/c/c3/Chalcidean_helmet.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* One dead president

- **File:Changing_of_Guard_Royal_Gibraltar_Regiment.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/1/1a/Changing_of_Guard_Royal_Gibraltar_Regiment.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 2.0 *Contributors:* Flickr: Changing of the Guard - Royal Gibraltar Regiment *Original artist:* 5DII
- **File:Cloak_Helmet_and_Chief.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/d/d4/Cloak_Helmet_and_Chief.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 2.0 *Contributors:* Hawaiian Chief's Feather Cloak ('ahu 'ula) and Helmet Bishop Museum Oahu, Hawaii *Original artist:* Gary Sizemore from California, USA
- **File:Close_Helmet_of_Claude_Gouffier.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/8/81/Close_Helmet_of_Claude_Gouffier.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 2.0 *Contributors:* Close Helmet of Claude Gouffier *Original artist:* THoog
- **File:Close_helm_armet_open.svg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/5/50/Close_helm_armet_open.svg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Wilhelm meis
- **File:Close_helmet_with_wolf-face_visor,_20th_century_reproduction_-_Higgins_Armory_Museum_-_DSC05436.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/7/78/Close_helmet_with_wolf-face_visor%2C_20th_century_reproduction_-_Higgins_Armory_Museum_-_DSC05436.JPG *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* I took this photograph. *Original artist:* Daderot
- **File:Colombian_military_band_at_Monument_of_Fallen_Soldiers_and_Police_in_Bogota_3-5-09.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/6c/Colombian_military_band_at_Monument_of_Fallen_Soldiers_and_Police_in_Bogota_3-5-09.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* http://www.defenselink.mil/PhotoEssays/PhotoEssaySS.aspx?ID=1116 *Original artist:* Master Sgt. Adam M. Stump, USAF
- **File:Commons-logo.svg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/4/4a/Commons-logo.svg *License:* ? *Contributors:* ? *Original artist:* ?
- **File:Complete_Guide_to_Heraldry_Fig577.png** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/d/df/Complete_Guide_to_Heraldry_Fig577.png *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* A Complete Guide to Heraldry. *Original artist:* Arthur Charles Fox-Davies
- **File:Coppergate_Helmet_YORCM_CA665-1.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/5/58/Coppergate_Helmet_YORCM_CA665-1.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 4.0 *Contributors:* This file originated on the York Museums Trust Online Collection. YMT hosted a GLAMwiki partnership in 2013/14. *Original artist:* Photographed by: York Museums Trust Staff
- **File:Corinthian_helmet_Denda_Staatliche_Antikensammlungen_4330.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/b/b7/Corinthian_helmet_Denda_Staatliche_Antikensammlungen_4330.jpg *License:* CC-BY-SA-3.0 *Contributors:* User:MatthiasKabel, own work, 2005-10-26. Image renamed from Image:Korinthischer helm.jpg *Original artist:* ?
- **File:Coventry_Sallet_HAGAM.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/d/d2/Coventry_Sallet_HAGAM.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work, Herbert Art Gallery and Museum, Coventry *Original artist:* ?
- **File:Crosby_Garret_Helmet_at_Sale.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/5/5a/Crosby_Garret_Helmet_at_Sale.jpg *License:* CC BY 2.0 *Contributors:* Close up *Original artist:* Portable Antiquities Scheme from London, England
- **File:Crosby_Garrett_Helmet_on_auction_at_Christies.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/0/00/Crosby_Garrett_Helmet_on_auction_at_Christies.jpg *License:* CC BY 2.0 *Contributors:* Auctioneer gets ready *Original artist:* Portable Antiquities Scheme from London, England
- **File:Crosby_Garrett_Roman_cavalry_helmet.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/3/3d/Crosby_Garrett_Roman_cavalry_helmet.jpg *License:* CC BY 2.0 *Contributors:* Number 9: The Crosby Garrett Roman cavalry helmet *Original artist:* Portable Antiquities Scheme from London, England
- **File:Crosby_Helmet_Side_view.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/0/0e/Crosby_Helmet_Side_view.jpg *License:* CC BY 2.0 *Contributors:* Close up side view *Original artist:* Portable Antiquities Scheme from London, England
- **File:Crécy_-_Grandes_Chroniques_de_France.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/f/f3/Cr%C3%A9cy_-_Grandes_Chroniques_de_France.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Grandes Chroniques de France, British Library Cotton MS Nero E. II pt.2, f.152v *Original artist:* Copiste inconnu
- **File:Double-visored_close_helm_by_Wendelin_Boeheim.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/6d/Double-visored_close_helm_by_Wendelin_Boeheim.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Wendelin Boeheim. Handbuch der Waffenkunde. Das Waffenwesen in seiner historischen Entwicklung vom Beginn des Mittelalters bis zum Ende des 18 Jahrhunderts, Leipzig 1890 *Original artist:* Wendelin Boeheim
- **File:Dutch_-_Zischagge_Helmet_-_Walters_511366_-_Three_Quarter.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/f/f0/Dutch_-_Zischagge_Helmet_-_Walters_511366_-_Three_Quarter.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Walters Art Museum: Home page Info about artwork *Original artist:*

  Dutch (?)

  German (?)
- **File:Eberzahnhelm_Heraklion.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/62/Eberzahnhelm_Heraklion.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 2.5 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* user:afrank99
- **File:Edit-clear.svg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/f/f2/Edit-clear.svg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* The *Tango! Desktop Project*. *Original artist:*

  The people from the Tango! project. And according to the meta-data in the file, specifically: "Andreas Nilsson, and Jakub Steiner (although minimally)."

- **File:Elementy_herbu.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/1/1d/Elementy_herbu.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 2.5 *Contributors:* own work based on work by User:Qyd *Original artist:* Original image created by User:Qyd, modified by User:Steifer
- **File:Elmo_da_parata,_bronzo,_da_Theilenhofen_(Iciniacum),_150-200_ca_02.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/d/d3/Elmo_da_parata%2C_bronzo%2C_da_Theilenhofen_%28Iciniacum%29%2C_150-200_ca_02.JPG *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* sailko
- **File:Elmo_da_ufficiale_in_acciaio,_coperto_di_foglia_d'argento,_IV_sec,_da_augusta-pfersee.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/8/8b/Elmo_da_ufficiale_in_acciaio%2C_coperto_di_foglia_d%27argento%2C_IV_sec%2C_da_augusta-pfersee.JPG *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* sailko
- **File:Elmo_di_tipo_frigio_e_corazza,_da_italia_meridionale,_350-300_ac._ca,_coll._privata_di_firenze_07.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/b/bc/Elmo_di_tipo_frigio_e_corazza%2C_da_italia_meridionale%2C_350-300_ac._ca%2C_coll._privata_di_firenze_07.JPG *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Sailko
- **File:Falling_buffe_Palace_Armoury_Valletta.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/7/73/Falling_buffe_Palace_Armoury_Valletta.jpg *License:* CC BY 2.5 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Marie-Lan Nguyen
- **File:Flickr_-_…trialsanderrors_-_On_the_Aerodrome_at_Amman,_T.E._Lawrence,_Sir_Herbert_Samuel,_Amir_Abdullah,_April,_1921.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/3/31/Flickr_-_%E2%80%A6trialsanderrors_-_On_the_Aerodrome_at_Amman%2C_T.E._Lawrence%2C_Sir_Herbert_Samuel%2C_Amir_Abdullah%2C_April%2C_1921.jpg *License:* CC BY 2.0 *Contributors:* On the Aerodrome at Amman: T.E. Lawrence, Sir Herbert Samuel, Amir Abdullah, April, 1921 *Original artist:* …trialsanderrors
- **File:Florentian_Armet_by_Emmanuel_Viollet-le-Duc.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/8/8f/Florentian_Armet_by_Emmanuel_Viollet-le-Duc.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* «Castles and Warfare in the Middle Ages» Eugène Emmanuel Viollet-le-Duc *Original artist:* Viollet-le-Duc
- **File:Folder_Hexagonal_Icon.svg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/4/48/Folder_Hexagonal_Icon.svg *License:* Cc-by-sa-3.0 *Contributors:* ? *Original artist:* ?
- **File:Gehörnter_Gott,_Enkomi.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/9/98/Geh%C3%B6rnter_Gott%2C_Enkomi.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Gerhard Haubold
- **File:German_-_Close_Helmet_of_the_\char"0022\relax{}Maximilian\char"0022\relax{}_Style_-_Walters_51465_-_Profile.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/1/1b/German_-_Close_Helmet_of_the_%22Maximilian%22_Style_-_Walters_51465_-_Profile.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Walters Art Museum: Home page Info about artwork *Original artist:* Anonymous (Germany)
- **File:Getty_villa_1526_(6571555293).jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/f/fa/Getty_villa_1526_%286571555293%29.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 2.0 *Contributors:* 1526 *Original artist:* alijava
- **File:GiorcesVeiiApollo1.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/69/GiorcesVeiiApollo1.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* ? *Original artist:* ?
- **File:Greek_-_Chalcidian-Type_Helmet_-_Walters_542468.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/5/5b/Greek_-_Chalcidian-Type_Helmet_-_Walters_542468.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Walters Art Museum: Home page Info about artwork *Original artist:* Anonymous (Greece)
- **File:Guisborough_Helmet_front_left.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/7/79/Guisborough_Helmet_front_left.jpg *License:* GFDL *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Prioryman
- **File:Guisborough_helmet_Mars.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/7/74/Guisborough_helmet_Mars.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Prioryman
- **File:Guisborough_helmet_findsite.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/e/e9/Guisborough_helmet_findsite.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Prioryman
- **File:Gundestrup_C.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/3/30/Gundestrup_C.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Original source: http://www.timelessmyths.com/celtic/gallery/dagda.jpg , via English Wikipedia http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:Gundestrup_C.jpg uploaded there by Dbachmann *Original artist:* ?
- **File:HJRK_B_44_-_Tournament_helmet_padding,_1484.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/6a/HJRK_B_44_-_Tournament_helmet_padding%2C_1484.jpg *License:* CC BY 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* **English:** Unknown, Innsbruck, 1484.
- **File:Hallaton_helmet_cheekpiece_1.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/f/ff/Hallaton_helmet_cheekpiece_1.jpg *License:* GFDL *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Prioryman

- **File:Hallaton_helmet_exhibition.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/e/eb/Hallaton_helmet_exhibition.jpg *License:* GFDL *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Prioryman
- **File:Hallaton_helmet_front_right.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/3/3f/Hallaton_helmet_front_right.jpg *License:* GFDL *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Prioryman
- **File:Harry_R._Hopps,_Destroy_this_mad_brute_Enlist_-_U.S._Army,_03216u_edit.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/6e/Harry_R._Hopps%2C_Destroy_this_mad_brute_Enlist_-_U.S._Army%2C_03216u_edit.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* This image is available from the United States Library of Congress's Prints and Photographs division under the digital ID ds.03216.
  This tag does not indicate the copyright status of the attached work. A normal copyright tag is still required. See Commons:Licensing for more information.
  Original artist: Harry R. Hopps, (1869-1937)
- **File:Hawaiian_feather_helmet_british_museum.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/5/51/Hawaiian_feather_helmet_british_museum.JPG *License:* GFDL *Contributors:* Photo by user:geni *Original artist:* Geni
- **File:Helm_DSC02149.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/a/a8/Helm_DSC02149.JPG *License:* CC-BY-SA-3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* David Monniaux
- **File:Helmet_(sallet),_probably_Italy,_1480-1490_-_Nelson-Atkins_Museum_of_Art_-_DSC08581.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/c/c0/Helmet_%28sallet%29%2C_probably_Italy%2C_1480-1490_-_Nelson-Atkins_Museum_of_Art_-_DSC08581.JPG *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Daderot *Original artist:* Daderot
- **File:Helmet_centurion_end_of_second_century.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/61/Helmet_centurion_end_of_second_century.jpg *License:* CC-BY-SA-3.0 *Contributors:* Photographed by myself during a show of Legio XV from Pram, Austria *Original artist:* ?
- **File:Helmet_of_Cotofenesti_-_Archaeological_sketch.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/a/aa/Helmet_of_Cotofenesti_-_Archaeological_sketch.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Art Historia by Radu Oltean *Original artist:* Unknown
- **File:Helmet_of_Cotofenesti_-_Front_Large_by_Radu_Oltean.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/e/eb/Helmet_of_Cotofenesti_-_Front_Large_by_Radu_Oltean.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Photographed by Radu Oltean on 21 April 2009, 18:40. *Original artist:* Unknown
- **File:Helmet_of_Cotofenesti_-_Front_Top_by_Radu_Oltean.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/c/c9/Helmet_of_Cotofenesti_-_Front_Top_by_Radu_Oltean.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Photographed by Radu Oltean on 21 April 2009, 18:40. *Original artist:* Unknown
- **File:Helmet_of_Cotofenesti_-_Graphical_Reconstruction_by_Radu_Oltean.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/7/78/Helmet_of_Cotofenesti_-_Graphical_Reconstruction_by_Radu_Oltean.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Photo and graphical reconstruction by Radu Oltean on 21 April 2009, 19:03. Blog article: Art Historia by Radu Oltean *Original artist:* Unknown
- **File:Helmet_of_Cotofenesti_-_Mythological_Scene_on_the_Side_by_Radu_Oltean.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/d/d0/Helmet_of_Cotofenesti_-_Mythological_Scene_on_the_Side_by_Radu_Oltean.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Photographed by Radu Oltean on 21 April 2009, 18:39. *Original artist:* Unknown
- **File:Helmet_of_Cotofenesti_-_Worn_by_Decebalus_in_the_movie_The_Dacians.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/c/c3/Helmet_of_Cotofenesti_-_Worn_by_Decebalus_in_the_movie_The_Dacians.jpg *License:* ? *Contributors:* 1967 *Dacii* movie by Sergiu Nicolaescu *Original artist:* ?
- **File:Helmet_of_Cotofenesti_at_the_National_Museum_of_Romanian_History_2011_-_Mythological_Scene_on_the_Back.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/1/1d/Helmet_of_Cotofenesti_at_the_National_Museum_of_Romanian_History_2011_-_Mythological_Scene_on_the_Back.jpg *License:* GFDL *Contributors:* Photographed by User:CristianChirita on 14 May 2011, 22:38:16 *Original artist:* Unknown
- **File:Helmet_of_Iron_Gates_at_Detroit_Institute_of_Arts_2_-_2011-03-03.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/a/a9/Helmet_of_Iron_Gates_at_Detroit_Institute_of_Arts_2_-_2011-03-03.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work, Codrin.B, 3 March 2011 *Original artist:* Unknown
- **File:Helmet_of_Warrior.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/3/30/Helmet_of_Warrior.JPG *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Shahakshay58
- **File:Helmet_typ_Montefortino_01.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/a/a8/Helmet_typ_Montefortino_01.jpg *License:* CC BY 2.5 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* User:MatthiasKabel
- **File:Helmet_typ_Weissenau_01.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/3/3e/Helmet_typ_Weissenau_01.jpg *License:* CC BY 2.5 *Contributors:* Museum Carnuntinum   *Original artist:* User:MatthiasKabel
- **File:Henry_M_Stanley_1872.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/d/d6/Henry_M_Stanley_1872.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* The autobiography of Sir Henry Morton Stanley 1890 *Original artist:* Sir Henry Morton Stanley
- **File:Herakles_Geryon_Cdm_Paris_202.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/7/70/Herakles_Geryon_Cdm_Paris_202.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* User:Bibi Saint-Pol, own work, 2007-05-25 *Original artist:* **English:** Inscription Painter
- **File:Herb_Szablon.svg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/2/21/Herb_Szablon.svg *License:* CC0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Zirguezi

- **File:Herbert_Art_Gallery_and_Museum_-_Coventry_Sallet.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/0/09/Herbert_Art_Gallery_and_Museum_-_Coventry_Sallet.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Rock drum
- **File:Het_Valkhof_-_Gesichtshelm_eines_Reiters.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/4/42/Het_Valkhof_-_Gesichtshelm_eines_Reiters.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Wolfgang Sauber
- **File:Horned_helmet.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/8/88/Horned_helmet.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Michel wal (Own work) *Original artist:* ?
- **File:Hyghalmen_Roll_Late_1400s.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/1/1b/Hyghalmen_Roll_Late_1400s.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Hyghalmen Roll *Original artist:* Unknown
- **File:Illustration_to_Richard_Wagner'{}s_\char"0022\relax{}Das_Rheingold".jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/6e/Illustration_to_Richard_Wagner%27s_%22Das_Rheingold%22.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* http://www.artpassions.net/cgi-bin/rackham.pl?../galleries/rackham/ring/ring10.jpg *Original artist:* Arthur Rackham
- **File:Illyrian_helmet_1.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/f/f1/Illyrian_helmet_1.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* One dead president, David Liam Moran
- **File:ItalianHelmets.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/1/1b/ItalianHelmets.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Commonwealth forces despatch *Original artist:* Unidentified
- **File:Italian_Armet_(15c)_by_Wendelin_Boeheim.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/8/81/Italian_Armet_%2815c%29_by_Wendelin_Boeheim.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Wendelin Boeheim. Handbuch der Waffenkunde. Das Waffenwesen in seiner historischen Entwicklung vom Beginn des Mittelalters bis zum Ende des 18 Jahrhunderts, Leipzig 1890 *Original artist:* Wendelin Boeheim
- **File:Iwein-laudine-ring.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/8/8a/Iwein-laudine-ring.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Stullkowski
- **File:Jidai_Matsuri_2009_228.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/5/5e/Jidai_Matsuri_2009_228.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Corpse Reviver
- **File:KHM_Wien_A_12_-_Bascinet_by_Master_A,_Milan,_c._1400,_side.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/d/dc/KHM_Wien_A_12_-_Bascinet_by_Master_A%2C_Milan%2C_c._1400%2C_side.jpg *License:* CC BY 3.0 *Contributors:* Photograph by Sandstein *Original artist:* **English:** "Master A", Milan, c. 1400-1410.
- **File:KHM_Wien_A_41_-_Moravian_nasal_helmet,_11th_century_transparent.png** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/e/ed/KHM_Wien_A_41_-_Moravian_nasal_helmet%2C_11th_century_transparent.png *License:* CC BY 3.0 *Contributors:* https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:KHM_Wien_A_41_-_Moravian_nasal_helmet,_11th_century.jpg *Original artist:* Sandstein (photo) / Macesito (cutted)
- **File:KHM_Wien_B_74_-_Great_helm_of_Albert_von_Prankh,_14th_century,_front.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/6b/KHM_Wien_B_74_-_Great_helm_of_Albert_von_Prankh%2C_14th_century%2C_front.jpg *License:* CC BY 3.0 *Contributors:* Photograph by Sandstein *Original artist:* **English:** Unknown.
- **File:KMM_-_Kriegergrab_Ciumesti_Helm_Kopie.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/9/93/KMM_-_Kriegergrab_Ciumesti_Helm_Kopie.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Wolfgang Sauber
- **File:Klappvisier_Hundsgugel_by_Wendelin_Boeheim.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/e/ef/Klappvisier_Hundsgugel_by_Wendelin_Boeheim.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Wendelin Boeheim. Handbuch der Waffenkunde. Das Waffenwesen in seiner historischen Entwicklung vom Beginn des Mittelalters bis zum Ende des 18. Jahrhunderts. Leipzig 1890 *Original artist:* Wendelin Boeheim
- **File:Konrad_Witz_Sabobai_And_Benaiah_(1435)_fragment.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/6b/Konrad_Witz_Sabobai_And_Benaiah_%281435%29_fragment.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Unknown *Original artist:* Konrad Witz
- **File:Krásna_Hôrka_37_(Burgonet_with_Buffe).png** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/2/2c/Kr%C3%A1sna_H%C3%B4rka_37_%28Burgonet_with_Buffe%29.png *License:* CC-BY-SA-3.0 *Contributors:* Image:Krásna Hôrka 37.JPG *Original artist:* Author of the original fotograph, Bubamara.
- **File:L'Eplattenier_helmet_IMG_3259.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/c/c4/L%27Eplattenier_helmet_IMG_3259.JPG *License:* CC BY-SA 2.0 fr *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Rama
- **File:Lascaux2.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/0/07/Lascaux2.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* http://www.mageist.net/Images/lascaux_horse.jpg *Original artist:* Cro-Magnon peoples
- **File:MAP_Expo_Oitaragainari_kawari_kabuto_XVII_02_01_2012.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/3/39/MAP_Expo_Oitaragainari_kawari_kabuto_XVII_02_01_2012.jpg *License:* CC0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Vassil
- **File:Macedonian_Army_Pezetairos.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/9/92/Macedonian_Army_Pezetairos.jpg *License:* CC-BY-SA-3.0 *Contributors:* ? *Original artist:* ?
- **File:Macedonian_Army_Thessalian.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/7/78/Macedonian_Army_Thessalian.jpg *License:* CC-BY-SA-3.0 *Contributors:* ? *Original artist:* ?
- **File:Maciejowski_Bible_Navin.gif** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/2/23/Maciejowski_Bible_Navin.gif *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Maciejowski Bible [1] *Original artist:* Anonymous
- **File:Maximilienne-p1000557.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/9/90/Maximilienne-p1000557.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 2.0 fr *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Rama
- **File:Mengu_(samurai_facial_armor).png** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/2/2a/Mengu_%28samurai_facial_armor%29.png *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Tanki Yoriaku: Hi Ko Ben (Japanese book on samurai armor published in 1735) *Original artist:* Hayakawa Kyuukei
- **File:Meyrick_Helmet_feb_2011.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/3/33/Meyrick_Helmet_feb_2011.JPG *License:* GFDL *Contributors:* Photo by user:geni *Original artist:* Geni

- **File:Milano_via_Larga_1983.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/0/08/Milano_via_Larga_1983.jpg *License:* CC BY 2.0 *Contributors:* Flickr: Piazza Fontana 1983 *Original artist:* Alan Denney
- **File:Moro_helmet,_Philippines_(M._América,_Madrid)_01.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/6d/Moro_helmet%2C_Philippines_%28M._Am%C3%A9rica%2C_Madrid%29_01.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Photograph: Luis García (Zaqarbal), 17 February 2008. *Original artist:* ?
- **File:Museum_für_Vor-_und_Frühgeschichte_Berlin_010.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/0/0d/Museum_f%C3%BCr_Vor-_und_Fr%C3%BChgeschichte_Berlin_010.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Einsamer Schütze
- **File:Museum_für_Vor-_und_Frühgeschichte_Berlin_015.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/8/8a/Museum_f%C3%BCr_Vor-_und_Fr%C3%BChgeschichte_Berlin_015.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Einsamer Schütze
- **File:Museum_of_ScotlandDSCF6331.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/8/86/Museum_of_ScotlandDSCF6331.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Johnbod
- **File:Musée_Cinquantenaire_Celtic_helmet.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/7/76/Mus%C3%A9e_Cinquantenaire_Celtic_helmet.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Michel wal
- **File:MuzeulSutuCoifMacedonean2.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/d/d2/MuzeulSutuCoifMacedonean2.JPG *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* CristianChirita
- **File:NedKelly_dock.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/c/ce/NedKelly_dock.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* State Library of Victoria Pictures Collections, Accession number IAN28/08/80/145 *Original artist:* Published by David Syme and Co., Melbourne
- **File:NewsteadDSCF6328.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/c/c0/NewsteadDSCF6328.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Johnbod
- **File:Newstead_Helmet_5.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/b/bf/Newstead_Helmet_5.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 2.5 *Contributors:* http://airminded.org/2008/02/28/edinburgh-2/ *Original artist:* Brett Holman" <bholman@airminded.org
- **File:Ostrov_helmet_front_left.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/b/b9/Ostrov_helmet_front_left.jpg *License:* GFDL *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Cristian Chirita
- **File:Ottoman_Empire_helmet_(chichak).jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/d/df/Ottoman_Empire_helmet_%28chichak%29.jpg *License:* CC BY 2.0 *Contributors:* http://www.flickr.com/photos/alkalisoaps/3312377995/in/pool-892086@N25/ *Original artist:* http://www.flickr.com/photos/alkalisoaps/ AlkaliSoaps
- **File:Pat_Williams_Pro_Bowl07.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/c/cb/Pat_Williams_Pro_Bowl07.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* ? *Original artist:* ?
- **File:Peretu_Helmet_side_view_Muzeul_National_de_Istorie_al_Romaniei.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/6f/Peretu_Helmet_side_view_Muzeul_National_de_Istorie_al_Romaniei.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* CristianChirita
- **File:Philadelphia_Museum_of_Art_Barbute.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/c/c9/Philadelphia_Museum_of_Art_Barbute.JPG *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Transferred from en.wikipedia to Commons by Apollo1758 using CommonsHelper. *Original artist:* Parkerbrown2000 at English Wikipedia
- **File:Pickelhaube_US_Marines_corps,_casque_à_pointe_des_marines_américains.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/8/8b/Pickelhaube_US_Marines_corps%2C_casque_%C3%A0_pointe_des_marines_am%C3%A9ricains.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Sebastiensecrets
- **File:Pictish_Stone_at_Aberlemno_Church_Yard_-_Battle_Scene_Detail.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/3/3d/Pictish_Stone_at_Aberlemno_Church_Yard_-_Battle_Scene_Detail.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Greenshed
- **File:Pioneer_Helmet.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/b/b3/Pioneer_Helmet.jpg *License:* CC-BY-SA-3.0 *Contributors:*

  I (Nathandbeal (talk)) created this work entirely by myself. *Original artist:*

  Nathandbeal (talk)
- **File:Portal-puzzle.svg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/f/fd/Portal-puzzle.svg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* ? *Original artist:* ?
- **File:Preussische_Pickelhaube.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/1/15/Preussische_Pickelhaube.jpg *License:* CC-BY-SA-3.0 *Contributors:* german wikipedia *Original artist:* de:User:Stahlkocher
- **File:Prussian_Army_Uniforms_1845.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/f/f3/Prussian_Army_Uniforms_1845.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* http://de.123rf.com/photo_15270212_preussischen-armee-uniformen-alte-illustration-erstellt-von-brugnot-ver html *Original artist:* Unknown
- **File:Question_book-new.svg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/9/99/Question_book-new.svg *License:* Cc-by-sa-3.0 *Contributors:*

  Created from scratch in Adobe Illustrator. Based on Image:Question book.png created by User:Equazcion *Original artist:*

  Tkgd2007
- **File:ReginaldWingate.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/0/05/ReginaldWingate.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* The River War, volume I, by Winston Churchill. Published 1899 by Longmans Green and Co, London. *Original artist:* Unknown. Original book page contains credit to W. L. Colls, who probably prepared photogravure printing plates for pictures in the book but no separate photographer credit is given, as appears on other pictures in the book.

- **File:René_d'Anjou_Livre_des_tournois_France_Provence_XVe_siècle.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/9/92/Ren%C3%A9_d%27Anjou_Livre_des_tournois_France_Provence_XVe_si%C3%A8cle.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* ? *Original artist:* ?
- **File:Ribchester_Helmet_2.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/8/87/Ribchester_Helmet_2.jpg *License:* CC BY 2.0 *Contributors:* ribchester 10 June 09-5 *Original artist:* Craig Shaw from Hebden Bridge, UK
- **File:Ribchester_Helmet_c.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/7/7e/Ribchester_Helmet_c.jpg *License:* CC BY 2.0 *Contributors:* British Museum, London *Original artist:* Rex Harris
- **File:Ribchester_Helmet_sketch.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/0/09/Ribchester_Helmet_sketch.JPG *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* http://www.georgeglazer.com/archives/prints/military/romanhelm.html *Original artist:* James Basire
- **File:Rom,_Vatikan,_Soldat_der_Schweizer_Garde_2.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/e/e7/Rom%2C_Vatikan%2C_Soldat_der_Schweizer_Garde_2.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 at *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Dnalor 01
- **File:Roman_Military_banner.svg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/4/4e/Roman_Military_banner.svg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Derivitave of File:Roman SPQR banner.svg, gladius (from File:gladii.svg), wreath (from File:Laurel wreath.svg) *Original artist:* Sonarpulse
- **File:Roman_bust_of_a_Dacian_tarabostes,_Hermitage,_St_Petersburg,_Russia_-_20070614.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/c/c8/Roman_bust_of_a_Dacian_tarabostes%2C_Hermitage%2C_St_Petersburg%2C_Russia_-_20070614.jpg *License:* GFDL *Contributors:* Own work, photographed by George Shuklin on 14 June 2007, 16:30. *Original artist:* Unknown
- **File:Roman_cavalry_reenactment_Carnuntum_2008_12.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/63/Roman_cavalry_reenactment_Carnuntum_2008_12.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* User:MatthiasKabel
- **File:Royal_guard_march_to_change_guard_in_the_Grand_Palace,_Thailand.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/4/4e/Royal_guard_march_to_change_guard_in_the_Grand_Palace%2C_Thailand.JPG *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Xiengyod
- **File:Sallet_helmet,_Southern_Germany,_1480-1490_-_Higgins_Armory_Museum_-_DSC05461.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/c/c7/Sallet_helmet%2C_Southern_Germany%2C_1480-1490_-_Higgins_Armory_Museum_-_DSC05461.JPG *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* I took this photograph. *Original artist:* Daderot
- **File:Scudamorehelmet.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/0/0c/Scudamorehelmet.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* http://www.flickr.com/photos/thoog/1271771431/in/set-72157600330606163/ *Original artist:* Todd Hoogerland
- **File:Scutum_1.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/e/e2/Scutum_1.jpg *License:* CC-BY-SA-3.0 *Contributors:* ? *Original artist:* ?
- **File:Secrete_(helmet)_lincoln_transparent.png** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/4/4d/Secrete_%28helmet%29_lincoln_transparent.png *License:* CC BY 3.0 *Contributors:* Non cutted photo *Original artist:* Geni (photo) / Macesito (cutted)
- **File:Sofia_-_Unique_Tracian_Helmet_from_Bronze_and_Silver.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/7/71/Sofia_-_Unique_Tracian_Helmet_from_Bronze_and_Silver.jpg *License:* CC BY 2.0 *Contributors:* originally posted to **Flickr** as Sofia - Unique Tracian Helmet from Bronze and Silver *Original artist:* Ann Wuyts
- **File:Spangenhelm-Sinj.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/3/3a/Spangenhelm-Sinj.JPG *License:* CC0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Völkerwanderer
- **File:Spanish_Conqueror_Helmet.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/6a/Spanish_Conqueror_Helmet.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Jorge Barrios
- **File:St_Wenceslas_helmet.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/5/5d/St_Wenceslas_helmet.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Schránil, Josef: O zbroji sv. Václava. In: Svatováclavský sborník na památku 1000. výročí smrti knížete Václava svatého. I – Kníže Václav svatý a jeho doba. Praha: Národní výbor pro oslavu svatováclavského tisíciletí, 1934. Print. *Original artist:* Unknown
- **File:Suji_kabuto_Met_14.100.160.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/d/d7/Suji_kabuto_Met_14.100.160.jpg *License:* CC BY 2.5 *Contributors:* Marie-Lan Nguyen (2011) *Original artist:* ?
- **File:Szyszakskrzydlaty.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/0/0f/Szyszakskrzydlaty.jpg *License:* CC0 *Contributors:* Self-photographed *Original artist:* jakubkaja
- **File:Text_document_with_red_question_mark.svg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/a/a4/Text_document_with_red_question_mark.svg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Created by bdesham with Inkscape; based upon Text-x-generic.svg from the Tango project. *Original artist:* Benjamin D. Esham (bdesham)
- **File:Thomas_Becket_Murder.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/4/43/Thomas_Becket_Murder.JPG *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* various on-line versions, including http://www.britannica.com/EBchecked/media/8797/Murder-of-Thomas-Becket-illustrati also cited on cover of Frank Barlow's "Thomas Becket" *Original artist:* Unknown
- **File:TombaPrincepNegre.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/0/0f/TombaPrincepNegre.JPG *License:* CC BY-SA 2.5 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Josep Renalias
- **File:Topfhelm_DHM_transparent.png** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/5/58/Topfhelm_DHM_transparent.png *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Topfhelm_DHM.jpg *Original artist:* Ulrich Waack
- **File:U.S._Military_Academy_COA.png** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/5/5f/U.S._Military_Academy_COA.png *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* US Army Institute of Heraldry *Original artist:* United States Army
- **File:WLANL_-_Michiel2005_-_Ruiterhelm.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/e/e9/WLANL_-_Michiel2005_-_Ruiterhelm.jpg *License:* CC BY-SA 2.0 *Contributors:* Ruiterhelm *Original artist:* Michiel from Leiden, the Netherlands
- **File:WLA_metmuseum_Tournament_Helm_Stechhelm.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/1/15/WLA_metmuseum_Tournament_Helm_Stechhelm.jpg *License:* CC BY 2.5 *Contributors:* Uploaded from the Wikipedia Loves Art photo pool on Flickr *Original artist:* Wikipedia Loves Art participant "Futons_of_Rock"

- **File:Wikisource-logo.svg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/4/4c/Wikisource-logo.svg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Rei-artur *Original artist:* Nicholas Moreau
- **File:Wiktionary-logo-en.svg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/f/f8/Wiktionary-logo-en.svg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Vector version of Image:Wiktionary-logo-en.png. *Original artist:* Vectorized by Fvasconcellos (talk · contribs), based on original logo tossed together by Brion Vibber
- **File:Zunari_kabuto1.JPG** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/b/b1/Zunari_kabuto1.JPG *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Samuraiantiqueworld
- **File:МАУ_4.jpg** *Source:* http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/5/5e/%D0%9C%D0%90%D0%A3_4.jpg *License:* Public domain *Contributors:* Платов А.С., Кирпичев Л.Л. Исторический очерк образования и развития Артиллерийского училища. 1820-1870. СПб., 1870. (http://mirknig.com/2011/08/23/istoricheskiy-ocherk-obrazovaniya-i-razvitiya-artilleriyskogo-uchilischa-1820-1870-gg.html) *Original artist:* Unknown

62.6.3 Content license

- Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0